

PREPARE

STUDENT'S BOOK

English **6**
Англійська мова

**Джоанна Коста
Мелані Вільямс**

**Ukrainian
Edition**



CAMBRIDGE

ВИДАВНИЦТВО

ЛІНГВІСТ

Джоанна Коста, Мелані Вільямс

Англійська мова

(6-й рік навчання)

Підручник для 6 класу закладів загальної середньої освіти
(з аудіосупроводом)

PREPARE

STUDENT'S BOOK

English
Англійська мова **6**

Ukrainian
Edition

Видавництво «Лінгвіст»

Київ – 2023

 CAMBRIDGE

ВИДАВНИЦТВО
ЛІНГВІСТ

CONTENTS

0	Get started	6
1	Sports and games	10
2	This is my day	14
CULTURE	The Paralympic Games and the Ukrainian Paralympic Champions	18
3	Great sounds	20
4	It was awesome!	24
LIFE SKILLS	Collaboration: Reaching agreement	28
REVIEW 1		30
5	Moments in history	32
6	What a great job!	36
CULTURE	Saturday jobs	40
7	An exciting trip	42
8	Favourite places	46
LIFE SKILLS	Physical well-being: Safety at home	50
REVIEW 2		52
9	Clothes and fashion	54
10	Buying things	58
CULTURE	Shopping	62
11	Eating out	64
12	The latest technology	68
LIFE SKILLS	ICT literacy: Writing a blog	72
REVIEW 3		74
13	Healthy bodies	76
14	Getting around town	80
CULTURE	Ukraine Natural Attractions	84
15	Mysteries in nature	86
16	Amazing animals	90
LIFE SKILLS	Social responsibility: Protecting animals	94
REVIEW 4		96
17	What are you watching?	98
18	Magazines and books	102
CULTURE	British TV around the world	106
19	School can be fun!	108
20	Families	112
LIFE SKILLS	Emotional skills: Being a good friend	116
REVIEW 5		118
	Extra activities	120
	Vocabulary list	123
	Grammar reference and practice	133
	List of irregular verbs	158

WELCOME TO PREPARE

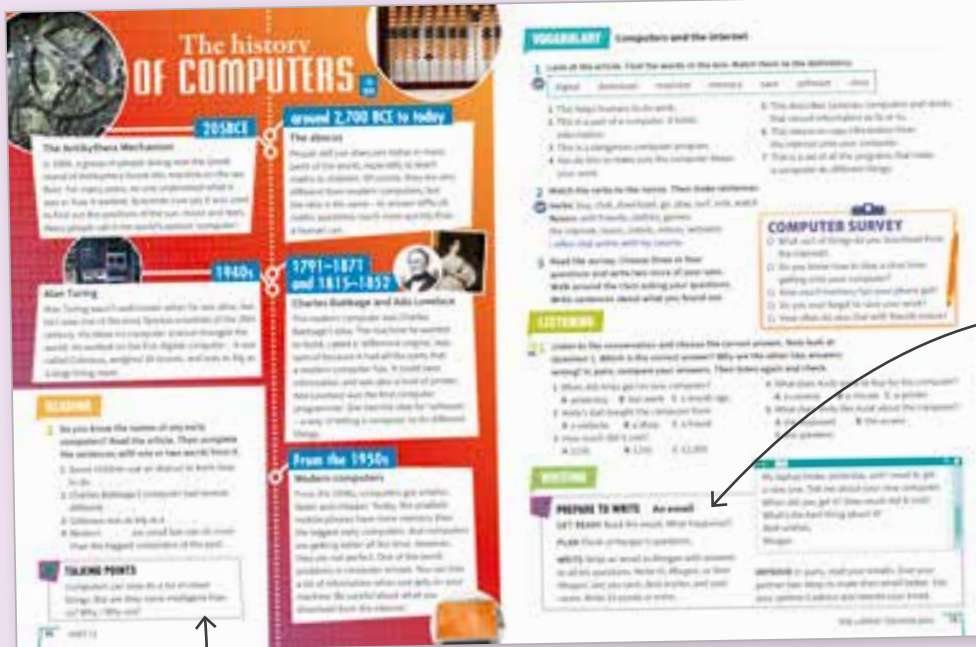
LEARN ABOUT THE FEATURES
IN YOUR NEW STUDENT'S BOOK!

PRONUNCIATION

Practise and improve
your pronunciation

ABOUT YOU

At the start of the
unit, talk about you
and your life



PREPARE TO WRITE

Prepare, plan and
check your writing

TALKING POINTS

Say what you think about
the topic in the unit

VIDEO

Watch interviews with
teenagers like you



CULTURE

Learn about the culture of English-speaking countries and the wider world

VIDEO

Watch interesting documentaries about the culture topics



LIFE SKILLS

Develop important skills that you can use in your daily life

PROJECT

Work together to create something fun and expand your learning

REVIEW

Check your progress



GET STARTED!



VOCABULARY

Things in the classroom

01 **1** Match the words in the box to the letters A–P in the photo. Then listen, check and repeat.

bag board chair coat computer door exercise book map
pencil case pen poster rubber ruler teacher textbook window

GRAMMAR

Verb *be*

1 What colour is each thing? In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

A: *It's blue and white.*

B: *Is it the coat?*

A: *Yes, it is.*

there is / there are

I **am**
he/she/it **is**
you/we/they **are**

2 Look at the photo and read the sentences. Say *yes* or *no*.

1 There are five students in the classroom.

4 There's a computer near the window.

2 There's a red pencil case on the table.

5 There's a poster on the wall.

3 There's a blue bag on a chair.

6 There's a bag on the floor.

02 **3** Look at the photo. Listen to and answer the questions. Use the phrases below.

Yes, there is. Yes, there are. No, there isn't. No, there aren't.

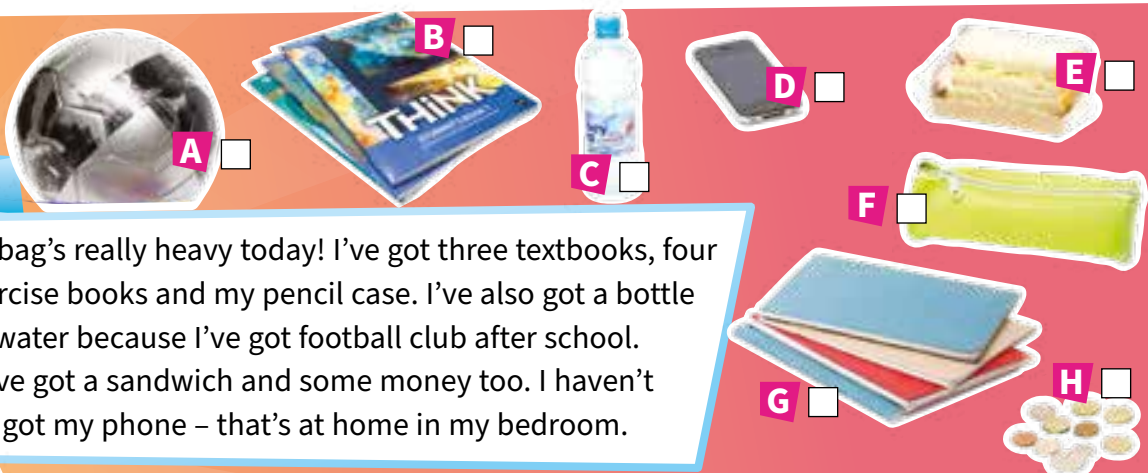
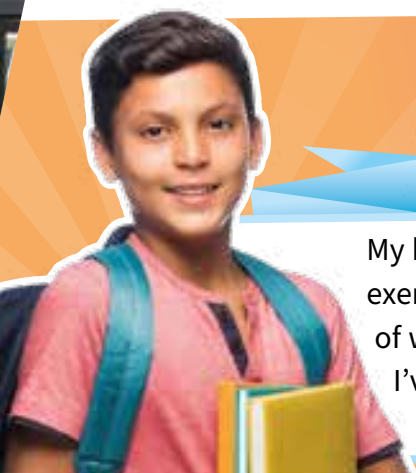
4 In pairs, student A, look around your classroom for 60 seconds, and then close your eyes. Student B, ask questions about the classroom.

Is there a green bag under my desk?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

have got

5 Read what Simon says. Tick (✓) the things he's got in his bag.



My bag's really heavy today! I've got three textbooks, four exercise books and my pencil case. I've also got a bottle of water because I've got football club after school. I've got a sandwich and some money too. I haven't got my phone – that's at home in my bedroom.

6 In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Tell the class about a partner.

A: *What have you got in your bag today?*

B: *I've got ...*

A: *Have you got a/an/any ... in your bag today?*

B: *Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.*

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 133

SPEAKING

PRONUNCIATION The alphabet

03 1 Listen and repeat.

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii Jj Kk Ll Mm
Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

04 2 In pairs, read out the names of the letters and complete the table with the letters that sound the same. Two columns have no additional letters! Listen and check.

A	B	F	I	O	U	R
H	C					

3 Complete questions 1–6 with the words in the box. Then match the questions to answers a–f.

borrow mean page repeat say spell

- I'm sorry, can you _____ that, please?
- How do you _____ *bonjour* in English?
- What _____ are we on?
- How do you _____ 'because'?
- Can I _____ your ruler?
- What does 'in pairs' _____?

- B-E-C-A-U-S-E.
- Sure, here you are.
- With your partner.
- I said, 'please do Exercise 3'.
- 19, I think.
- Hello.

VOCABULARY

Numbers

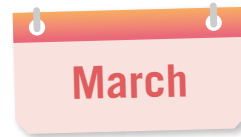
05 **1** Listen and repeat.

06 **2** Listen and choose the numbers you hear.

- a 25 75 39 d 14 16 40
b 13 30 70 e 17 19 90
c 41 61 91 f 15 50 80

Dates

3 Say the months in the correct order.



07 **4** Listen and write the dates.

When we **say** dates, we say *the* and *of*:
*My birthday is on **the** ninth **of** June.*

When we **write** dates, we don't write *the* or *of*:
My birthday is on 9th June.

1 *1st March*

In pairs, compare your answers. Say the dates.

5 In small groups, ask and answer the questions.

- When / your birthday?
- What / today's date?
- When / your mum's/dad's birthday?

Write the dates of all the students in your group.

10 20 30 40
ten twenty thirty forty

50 60 70 80
fifty sixty seventy eighty

90 100
ninety a hundred



GRAMMAR

can

1 Match the photos A–H to the words in the box.

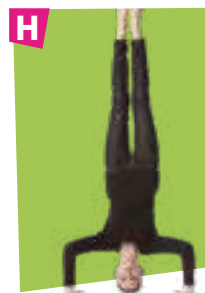
draw a car make a cake play tennis
ride a bike run 5 km speak three languages
stand on your head swim underwater

2 In pairs, ask and answer about the activities in Ex. 1.

A: *Can you play tennis?* B: *Yes, I can.*

A: *Can you swim underwater?* B: *No, I can't.*

Now ask around the class. How many people can ...
swim underwater? speak three languages?
ride a bike? play tennis? draw a car?



Present simple

3 Read about the students and answer the questions.

Use complete sentences.

- Does Bohdan like music?
- How many brothers has Jason got?
- What sport does Millie like?
- Where does Bohdan want to go?
- What does Jason do every day?
- When does Millie go shopping?

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions. Then tell the class.

0 / do sports every day?

A: *Do you do sports every day?*

B: *Yes, I do. I play tennis after school every day.*

- What kind of music / like?
- / like travelling?
- / play football at school?
- / like swimming?
- What / favourite food?



Hi, my name's Bohdan.

I've got a brother and a sister. I like music and I love travelling. I want to go to China.



Hello, I'm Jason.

I haven't got any brothers or sisters. I like all sports and I play football every day.



Hello, my name's Millie.

I like swimming and I often go shopping with my sister on Saturday. I love sweets, but I don't like ice cream.

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 134

SPEAKING

1 Write questions to find out about your partner's ...

- age
- phone number
- favourite pop star
- address
- brothers and sisters
- favourite school subject

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Write sentences about a partner.

1 SPORTS AND GAMES



VOCABULARY AND READING

Sports

? **ABOUT YOU**
 Do you like basketball, football or tennis?
 Which sport do you prefer?
 Do you play any sports?

1 Match the pictures A–M to the words in the box. Listen, check and repeat.

do athletics do gymnastics go cycling go sailing go skating go snowboarding
 go surfing play badminton play baseball play hockey play rugby play table tennis
 play volleyball

2 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Which of the sports do you do in teams? Which do you do alone?
- 2 Which of the sports can you do both in teams and alone?
- 3 Which of these sports do you do? Which of them do you prefer?

PRONUNCIATION /eɪ/ and /aɪ/

3 Put the words into the correct column. Listen and check. Then repeat.

baseball bike fly play riding skating	/eɪ/ sailing	/aɪ/ cycling

4 Read the blogs on pages 10–11. Who does their sport every week?

Who can't do their sport where they live? Then answer the questions.

- 1 What does Sophie do at the weekend?
- 2 What does Sophie want to do at the university?
- 3 Where does Ben prefer to be?
- 4 Why does Ben go snowboarding every day?
- 5 What does 'goofy-foot' mean?

TEENBLOG: SPORT

Post about you and your sport here. **10**

It's fun!

My sport is ... rugby! That's me in the photo. People think that rugby is for boys, but that's not true. More than 18,000 women and girls play rugby in England. My team always plays a match on Saturday or Sunday, and I usually go to practice games three times a week. It's hard



work, but it's never boring! I'm 14 and I play for the U15s. That's the team for players under the age of 15. When I'm older, I want to go to the rugby summer camp at Loughborough University. My favourite player, Fran Matthews, went there and now she plays for the England national rugby team.

Posted by **Sophie White**

We use the **present simple** to talk about things we do often or every day.

I go snowboarding every day.

1 Look at these examples from the blogs. The adverbs of frequency are in red.

My team **always** plays a match on Saturday or Sunday. It's **never** boring. I **sometimes** go snowboarding with Mum. I **often** go out with my little sister. It's **usually** quiet.

2 Answer the questions. Then choose the correct words to complete the rules.

- Which sentences in Exercise 1 have a present simple verb?
- Which sentences in Exercise 1 have the verb **be**?

3 Read the examples and choose the correct words to complete the rules.

Dmytro doesn't **usually** go snowboarding with his dad.
Do you **sometimes** play volleyball with friends?
Is rugby **often** dangerous?
Football isn't **always** boring!

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 134

4 Put the adverbs in the right place to complete the sentences.

- I play hockey at school on Fridays. (usually)
- Sophie is tired after rugby matches. (often)
- People don't go sailing in teams. (always)
- Do you go cycling? (often)

5 Put the words in order to make sentences and questions.

- welcome / are / in / our / club / always / you
- skating / she / go / usually / does / ?
- Mondays / do / on / athletics / never / we
- cycling / on / Fridays / sometimes / Tom / goes

6 How often do you do the sports in Ex. 1 on page 10?

7 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- What sports do you do? How often?
- How often do you go to watch sports?
- How often do you go to the mountains?
- Who are your favourite sports stars?

Put the words in **red** in the right place.

0% 100%
a b c d e

In sentences with the **verb be**, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the **verb**.
In sentences with the **present simple**, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the **verb**.

In negatives and questions with the **present simple**, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the **main verb**.
In negatives and questions with the **verb be**, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the verb **be**.

Goofy-foot or regular?

I love the snow and the mountains. I feel at home there. I live in a city and there is no snow here, but in the holidays, I always go to the mountains with my family. I sometimes go snowboarding with mum, but I often go with my little sister and other young people. Mum usually skis with my dad, and my sister and I like spending more time in the snow than they

do. It's usually quiet. When we're in the mountains, I go snowboarding every day and I'm getting really good. I often think about the future – I want to be a famous snowboarder one day, like Max Parrot. Oh, and I'm goofy-foot – that means I put my right foot at the front of the board.

Posted by Ben James

READING

- 1 Look at the photos of the sports and games. What can you see?
- 2 Read the three texts and match them to the photos.

11

TRY THESE SPORTS!

1 CYCLE-BALL

This sport is like football on bikes. There are two teams. Each team has usually got two players. The bikes don't have any brakes to stop them. Players in each team try to hit the ball into the goal. They can use their bike or their heads to do this. The ball is quite heavy – it weighs half a kilogram. The winning team is the team with the most goals at the end of the game.

2 GILLI-DANDA

This is an ancient sport from India. The players use two things: one long stick, called a *danda* and a short egg-shaped bat, called a *gilli*. There are two teams. One player puts the *gilli* on the ground inside a small circle and hits it into the air with the *danda*. Then the player hits the *gilli* again and runs to touch a spot outside the circle to get a point.

3 OCTOPUSH

The sport is also called *underwater hockey*. There are two teams. Each team has got six players. Players swim underwater to play this game. They use small sticks and a puck. The puck is a little like a flat ball. It's heavy and weighs about a kilogram. Players try to push the puck along the bottom of a swimming pool into the other team's goal. The winning team is the team with the most goals at the end of the match.

- 3 Read the three texts again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 There are always two players in a cycle-ball team.
- 2 Cycle-ball players can't hit the ball with their hands.
- 3 The ball in cycle-ball is small and light.
- 4 *Gilli-danda* comes from India.
- 5 Players use a small ball in *gilli-danda*.
- 6 Sticks and bats in *gilli-danda* are the same size.
- 7 People play octopush in teams.
- 8 Players in octopush hit the ball, or puck, with their hands.
- 9 Players in octopush swim underwater to play their game.



TALKING POINTS

Which of these sports do you want to try? Do you have any sports like these in your country?

VOCABULARY

Sports equipment

1 Match the photos A–E to the words in the box.

EP bat ball board racket stick



12 Listen and check. Then repeat.

13 Complete the table with the sports in the box. Some sports can go in more than one column. Listen and check. Then repeat.

badminton	baseball	basketball	
cycle-ball	cycling	football	<i>gilli-danda</i>
hockey	octopush	rugby	running
sailing	skating	snowboarding	surfing
swimming	table tennis	tennis	volleyball



Use a stick,
a racket or
a bat



Use a ball



Use a board

3 Complete the information with the sports words in Ex. 1.

TABLE TENNIS

- 1 One for each player.
- 2 One small, light for the game.

BASEBALL

- 3 One for each team.
- 4 One small, hard for the game.

BADMINTON

- 5 One for each player.

OCTOPUSH

- 6 One small for each player.
- 7 One heavy puck, like a flat for the game.

LISTENING

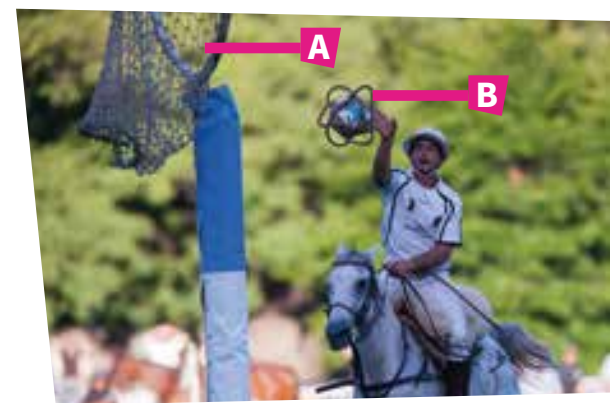
1 Look at the photo of the sport. Match the words 1–2 to A and B in the photo.

- 1 handle 2 net

14 Listen to an interview with a boy about his unusual sport. What's the name of the sport?

14 Listen again, and choose the correct words.

- 1 There are *four* / *six* players in each team.
- 2 There are *six* / *eight* handles on the ball.



- 3 Players *throw* / *give* the ball to each other.
- 4 Players *throw* / *put* the ball in the net to score.

SPEAKING

1 Think of a sport. Choose one from this unit or another sport that you know. In pairs, take turns to ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Do people do this sport inside or outside?
 - 2 Is the sport on or under water?
 - 3 Is this sport on snow?
 - 4 What things do people need to do this sport?
 - 5 Do people play this sport in your country?
 - 6 What do you like about this sport?
 - 7 Who are some of the famous players of this sport?
- Try and guess the sport.

2 THIS IS MY DAY

? ABOUT YOU

What time does your alarm go off on a school day?
What do you do in the morning before you go to school?



▶ ▶ 🔊 0:03 / 4:05

MY MORNING ROUTINE

11,345 views

1k ♥

Share ↻



Maddie's mad life

FOLLOW

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Daily routines

15 1 Match the photos to the phrases in the box. Listen and check.

Then repeat.

brush your hair	check your messages
clean your teeth	get dressed have breakfast
leave the house	prepare your school bag
put on your shoes	tidy your room wake up

16 2 Listen to Maddie talking about her morning routine. Number the photos in the order that you hear them.

16 3 Can you remember Maddie's routine? Complete the sentences with the times in the box. You don't need to use all the times. Listen again and check.

6.00	6.30	6.45	6.50	7.00	7.10	7.15
7.30	7.40	8.00	8.10			

- 1 My alarm goes off at
- 2 I get up at
- 3 I clean my teeth at
- 4 I get dressed at
- 5 I prepare my school bag at
- 6 I put my shoes on and leave home at

4 In pairs or small groups, talk about your morning routine.



1 Look at the examples from the listening. Write *simple* or *continuous*.Complete the rules with the underlined words.

Present _____

Today, I'm talking about my morning routine.I'm having cereal with fruit today.At the moment, I'm wearing my favourite T-shirt.I'm leaving the house now.I'm not wearing my uniform today.

Present _____

I never have a shower in the morning.I always check my messages in the morning.I sometimes have toast and butter.I usually wear my uniform.I don't usually have a shower in the morning.We often use the **present simple** with words like _____, _____, _____ and _____.We often use the **present continuous** with words like _____, _____ and _____.

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 135

2 Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.

0 I 'm shopping (shop) at the moment. I can't talk.

1 My mum always _____ (cook) nice food.

2 I _____ (stay) at home today. I _____ (not go) to school.

3 It's five o'clock now and I _____ (watch) TV with my sister.

4 What time _____ your dad usually _____ (get up) on Sundays?

5 It's OK, Jack _____ (not sleep) at the moment. You can go and talk to him.

3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

0 My cousin gets married today. *is getting*

1 How are you? I write to you to give some news.

2 What do you do at the moment?

3 My brother are not going swimming every day.

4 My mum is only working in the mornings.

5 We usually are eating a big lunch on Sunday.

4 Make sentences with the present simple and present continuous. Use

usually and *today* or *at the moment*.

1 have a sandwich for lunch / spaghetti

2 play football on Saturday / play tennis

3 get up at seven o'clock / eight o'clock

4 have a shower / have a bath

5 Put the words in order to make questions. Then match the questions to the correct answer. In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

1 your / the / moment / friend / what / doing / is / at / ?

2 bed / do / go / you / what / usually / to / time / ?

3 school / do / get / home / how / from / you / ?

4 day / do / every / get / at / same / up / the / time / you / ?

a 10 p.m.

b I walk.

c She's sleeping.

d Yes, I do.

6 In pairs, Student A, mime an activity in the box. Student B, guess what it is.

catch a bus	check your messages	do some homework	go to sleep
paint a picture	play football	prepare lunch	put on your coat
			take a photo

B: *Are you putting on your sunglasses?* A: *No* B: *Are you taking a photo?*

Student A, when Student B guesses the activity, give more information:

A: *I go to a photography club every Friday. It starts at 7 p.m. I go there by bus.*

READING

1 Read the texts. Who starts school the earliest?

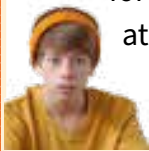
Tell us about your day...

Three young people from around the world describe a typical school day



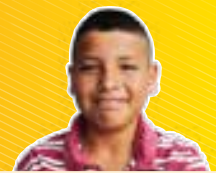
A Onni – Finland

I get up at 8.00 a.m. For breakfast I have cereal and milk, with orange **juice**. After breakfast, I meet my friend, and we go to school together on the metro. Some days school starts at 9.00 but on other days at 10.00. We don't wear a uniform, and we call our teachers by their first names. We all get a free lunch at school – meat or fish with vegetables for the **main course** and fruit for **dessert**. School usually finishes at 2.45, and after that, I go to music lessons or drama club. I have a **snack** in the evening before bed.



B Diego – Mexico

I wake up at 6.00 a.m., have a shower and put on my uniform. My breakfast is coffee, with bread and cheese or avocado. At 7.00 a.m., it's time to go to school. Sometimes I walk, but often my mum drives me. Classes begin at 8.00 and finish at 2.30. After that, I have my art class. I have **lunch** at about 3.00, and then I do my homework. I do it till 6.00 or 7.00. After that, I go on the internet or watch TV with my family. I have **dinner** at about 8.00.



C Aban – Ghana

My mother wakes me and my sister up at 5.00 a.m. I water the plants in the garden, and my sister prepares the food for the evening meal. Then we put on our school uniforms and brush our teeth. We leave the house at 6.30 and buy **breakfast** on our way to school. Lessons are from 7.30 to 2.30 p.m. Lunch is at school – today, it's rice and tomatoes. I like it, but my sister doesn't! After school I have my football class, and in the evening I watch TV before bed.



2 Read the texts again. For each question, say Onni, Diego or Aban.

- Who says he uses the computer in the evening?
- Who can choose what he wears to school?
- Who doesn't have breakfast at home?
- Who goes to school by car?
- Who does sport after school?
- Who has a hot drink in the morning?



TALKING POINTS

Whose school day is like yours or different?
Was any of the information surprising to you?

VOCABULARY Food

1 Look at the texts and find these **words**.

- This is the first meal of the day. *breakfast*
- This is sweet food after the main meal.
- You have this when you don't need a big meal.
- You have this meal in the middle of the day.
- This is a drink made from fruit.
- This is the last meal of the day.
- This is the largest or most important part of the meal.

18

2 Match the photos to the words in the box. Listen and check.

avocado bread cabbage cereal
cheese cucumber fish fruit
honey hot chocolate jam
mango pasta toast tomatoes
rice vegetables yoghurt



3 Think of ten more food words. In pairs, compare your words. Then ask and answer these questions.

- 1 What's your favourite food? What don't you like?
- 2 What do you have for breakfast?

- 3 What time do you have dinner? What do you eat?
- 4 What snacks do you have every day?



PRONUNCIATION The sound /ə/



4 Listen and repeat.

breakfast dinner vegetables



5 Listen and repeat. Circle the /ə/ sound in each word. One word has two /ə/ sounds. Which word is it?

banana chocolate cucumber pasta
salad tomato yoghurt

LISTENING

1 Read the poster. What do you think of these tips?



2 Listen to the radio show. You will hear a woman asking six students about getting up in the morning. Match each student to the correct tip. There is an extra tip.

Student 1 – Tip C Student 2 – Tip _____ Student 3 – Tip _____
Student 4 – Tip _____ Student 5 – Tip _____ Student 6 – Tip _____



3 Listen again and check. In groups, discuss the questions.

- 1 Which of the tips do you think are /aren't useful?
- 2 Can you think of other tips for getting up in the morning?
- 3 Is getting up in the morning easy or difficult for you?

WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A paragraph about your routine

GET READY Read the texts in Ex. 1 on page 16 again and find all the examples of *and*, *but*, *or*.

Choose the correct words.

- 1 We don't get chocolate *or* / *but* crisps at school.
- 2 I walk to school *but* / *or* brother gets the bus.
- 3 I eat lots of fruit *and* / *or* drink lots of water.
- 4 I like staying up late *but* / *and* I can't do that during the week.
- 5 I don't like carrots *or* / *but* tomatoes.

PLAN Make notes about what you do and eat on a typical school day.

WRITE Write a paragraph about it. Look at your notes and the reading texts for ideas. Use *and*, *but* and *or* in your paragraph.

REVIEW In pairs, read your own text and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their text better.

7 tips to help you feel great in the morning!

A have a cold shower



B tidy your room



C let in the sun



D drink fruit juice



F use your brain!

E move!



G don't keep your alarm by your bed



CULTURE

THE PARALYMPIC GAMES AND THE UKRAINIAN PARALYMPIC CHAMPIONS

1 In pairs, discuss the questions with your partner.

- 1 What's the difference between Olympic and Paralympic Games?
- 2 Did you watch the Winter Paralympic Games 2022? Where was it held?

2 Read the text in boxes 1–6 and match them to the sports in the photos. Say sitting volleyball or wheelchair rugby.

3 Read the texts again and complete the table.

	Sitting volleyball	Wheelchair rugby
Where do you play?	1	2
What do they need?	a ball and a 3	wheelchairs and a 4
How many players are there in a team?	5	6
How many players from each team are on the court?	7	8

4 Find the words highlighted in the text and choose the correct meanings, a or b.

- 1 medal
 - a a type of ball
 - b a prize in a sports competition
- 2 wheelchair
 - a something people use when they can't walk
 - b something people use to stand on
- 3 court
 - a a place with seats
 - b an area for games
- 4 player
 - a a person in a wheelchair
 - b a person playing a game
- 5 goal line
 - a a line you pass to get points
 - b the number of players in a team

FACTFILE

The Paralympic Games

The **International Paralympic Committee** website (www.paralympic.org) tells us these facts:

First official Paralympic Games: 1960. They were held in Rome, Italy and there was a special opening and closing ceremony.

Number of sports: Around 25

Celebrated: Every two years. There are Summer Games and Winter Games.



Paralympic SPORTS

The Paralympic Games take place every two years. There are Winter Games and Summer Games. Athletes with physical disabilities from different countries compete for gold, silver and bronze medals.

The Paralympic Games have a lot of different competitions for a lot of different sports. There are 22 sports in the Summer Games and five sports in the Winter Games.

Here's a description of two popular sports played in the Paralympic Games.



Wheelchair rugby

INTERESTING FACT!

2022 Winter Paralympics medal table

Country	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
1 China	18	20	23	61
2 Ukraine	11	10	8	29
3 Canada	8	6	11	25



Sitting volleyball

22

1

WR You play this sport on an indoor court. **Players** are in **wheelchairs**. They need a ball. They pass the ball from one person to another.

2

You play this sport on a court inside. Players sit on the floor. They need a net and a ball. Teams need to hit the ball over the net in three turns using their arms.

3

Each team has six players on the **court**. Each team is on a different side of the net.

4

There are 12 players on a team, but there are only four players on the court for each team at one time. For a goal, the team carries the ball over the opposite team's line and two wheels need to cross the line.

5

The net is lower than in the Olympic version. In the Olympic version, the players stand.

6

The indoor court is smaller than in the game played outside. It is the same size as a basketball court. The **goal lines** are at the far ends of the court.



TALKING POINTS

Which sport do you like best – sitting volleyball or wheelchair rugby. Why?

23

5 Listen to an interview with Martha Dirksen about a Paralympic sport. What sport does she do?



Wheelchair basketball



Wheelchair rugby



Wheelchair tennis

23

6 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How old is Martha?
- 2 Where is the court?
- 3 What does she want to be in one day?
- 4 What has her sports hero got?
- 5 Where is David Wagner from?
- 6 Does Martha play tennis on Tuesdays?
- 7 Does Martha rest at weekends?

PROJECT

An interview

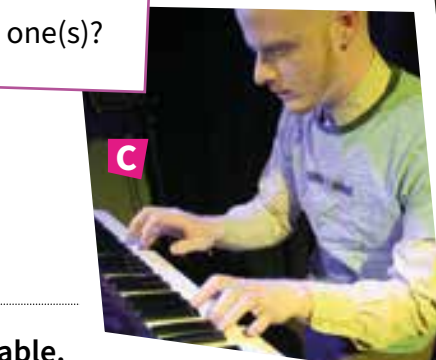
Imagine you work for a radio station. In pairs, write interview questions to ask a Ukrainian Paralympic athlete.

- Find out:
 - Their name
 - What sport they do
 - How many medals they have
 - How to succeed in this sport
 - Write three questions you can ask the athlete.
 - Find information on a Paralympic athlete.
- Answer the questions.
- Tell the class what you found out.



▶ 01 NOW WATCH THE CULTURE VIDEO

3 GREAT SOUNDS



ABOUT YOU

02 Watch the video. Ask and answer the questions.

When do you listen to music?

Where do you listen to music?

Do you listen to music alone or with friends?

Can you play any musical instruments? Which one(s)?

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Music

1 Look at the words in the box. Complete the table.

classical music drums electric guitar hip-hop
jazz keyboard opera piano pop rap
rock saxophone sopilka soul violin

Types of music	Musical instruments
----------------	---------------------

24 **2** Match the photos A–F to the musical instruments in Ex. 1. Listen and check. Then repeat.

25 **3** Listen to the different types of music. Match them to the types of music in Ex. 1.

4 What types of music do you think the people are playing in the photos?

5 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- You usually need a lot of different instruments for *classical music* / *pop* and the pieces of music are often quite long.
- People sometimes use sticks when they play the *keyboard* / *drums*.
- There are different singers in *jazz* / *an opera*. It's a bit like a play with music and singing.
- In *rap* / *rock*, the artists don't really sing the words; they speak them.
- You put the *sopilka* / *violin* to your mouth to play it.
- A *piano* / *an electric guitar* is quite easy to carry around.

26 **6** Listen to Jason and Mia talking about music and musical instruments. Who can play:

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 the saxophone? | 3 the keyboard? |
| 2 the electric guitar? | 4 the piano? |

26  **7 Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?**

- 0 Mia likes the new album a lot. ✓
- 1 Mia often listens to jazz at home.
- 2 Jason likes opera.
- 3 Jason's sister plays in a rock group.
- 4 Jason thinks the violin is easy to play.
- 5 Mia likes the drums.

GRAMMAR *like, don't like, hate, love + -ing*

1 Put the words in bold on the correct place (a-d).

- 1 I **don't like** listening to opera.
- 2 She **likes** playing classical music.
- 3 I **hate** playing the violin.
- 4 I **love** listening to rap.



27  **Listen and check. Then repeat.**

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 137

2 Look at the examples in the table. How does the verb change in the -ing form?

help → helping	write → writing	run → running
----------------	-----------------	---------------

Complete the table with the *-ing* form of these verbs in the correct columns.

choose	drive	get	learn	make	practise	ride	sing	sit	swim	win
--------	-------	-----	-------	------	----------	------	------	-----	------	-----

3 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I *like / hate* rock. It's too loud.
- 2 She *doesn't like / loves* playing the piano. She prefers the saxophone.
- 3 My mum *loves / hates* listening to opera. She often goes to watch it.
- 4 Lots of people *like / don't like* hip-hop, but I think it's great.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

- 0 On Sundays, I like having lunch with my family. (have)
- 1 My dad likes _____ the news online. (read)
- 2 I really love _____ football with my brother. (play)
- 3 I love _____ to my friends' houses to play computer games. (go)
- 4 Everyone in our class likes _____ English. (learn)
- 5 Do you like _____ to music when you are doing your homework? (listen)

5 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you listen to music?
- 2 What's your favourite type of music?
- 3 Who are your favourite musicians and what instruments do they play?
- 4 What's your favorite instrument?
- 5 Can students learn to play instruments at your school? Which ones?

READING

1 Look at the photos. In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Is it easy to become a famous musician?
- 2 How do people start in the music business?
- 3 How can the internet help people to become musicians?

2 Read the article quickly and match 1–3 to A–C.

STARTING IN THE MUSIC BUSINESS

28

DO YOU WANT TO PLAY IN A BAND, OR BECOME A FAMOUS SINGER OR SONGWRITER?

Read on to find out how!

1 I'm a singer-songwriter. I give concerts at a local club. Everyone likes listening to my music and wants to buy a CD. What can I do next? **Pete**

2 Hi, I play in a band with some friends from school. The others aren't serious about music, but I am. Help! Do I stay with the band or find other musicians to play with? **Shona**

3 I'm 15 and a rapper. I record my songs and put them online. I get lots of hits! But I live in the countryside and there are no gigs here. It's too far for me to travel to the city. What can I do to become famous? **Spark**

3 Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 Pete sells CDs of his songs at his concerts.
- 2 Pete needs to make an album with a record company.
- 3 Shona is more interested in music than her friends are.
- 4 Shona needs to change schools soon.
- 5 Spark lives a long way from the city.
- 6 Spark doesn't need to perform live for people to hear his music.



- A** Why not make a music video too? Then it doesn't matter where you live. Ask your parents or someone from school if it's okay, and they can show you how to do it. Then you can upload the video to a social network like YouTube or Instagram. That's how Shawn Mendes became famous!
- B** You already write and perform your own songs. Great! Next step: record an album using computer software and post it online. You don't need a record deal. College courses are a really useful way to learn how to do this and can give you other ideas too. Ask at your school.
- C** Music is an important part of your life. Stay with your friends for the moment but think about going to a music school. These schools teach music and everything you need to know about becoming a musician. Talk to your parents about it. Good luck!



TALKING POINTS

Are any of your friends musicians?
Do any of your friends upload their music to the internet?
Do you like listening to music on the internet?
Which sites do you prefer?

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.



become a singer become famous give a concert go on tour make a music video
play in a band record an album teach music

- 1 My dad can help me _____. Then I can upload it to Youtube.
- 2 My sister is a famous classical musician. She _____ in our town every summer.
- 3 Amy can't play an instrument, but she has a very good voice. She wants to _____.
- 4 Andy plays the drums well. He _____ with his friends on Saturdays at the music club.
- 5 We've got ten new songs and they're really good. Let's _____.
- 6 I really want to _____ one day and be on TV and play at big festivals.
- 7 My mum plays lots of instruments, and she _____ at our school.
- 8 When bands _____, they play concerts almost every night in lots of different places.

2 Read the article again. In pairs, answer the questions in your own words.

0 Pete: 'What can I do next?'

I think you can record an album and play it to your friends.

1 Shona: 'Do I stay with the band or find other musicians to play with?'

2 Spark: 'How can I become famous?'

Use information from the article.

LISTENING



PRONUNCIATION | Email addresses, phone numbers and names

For @ we say 'at'. For . we say 'dot'.

For two letters (bb) we say 'double (b)'.

For two numbers (77) we say 'double (seven)'.

For the number 0 we say 'oh'.



1 In pairs, practise. Listen and check. Then repeat.

1 Say this email address:
school@musicpopcloud.com

2 Say this phone number: *0451 256 337*
3 Spell this name: Joanna

2 In pairs, take it in turns.

- 1 Say your email address.
- 2 Say your phone number.
- 3 Spell your mother's or your father's first name.



3 Listen to the conversation. Shona is talking to her friend Emma about the music school. Complete the notes. Listen again and check.

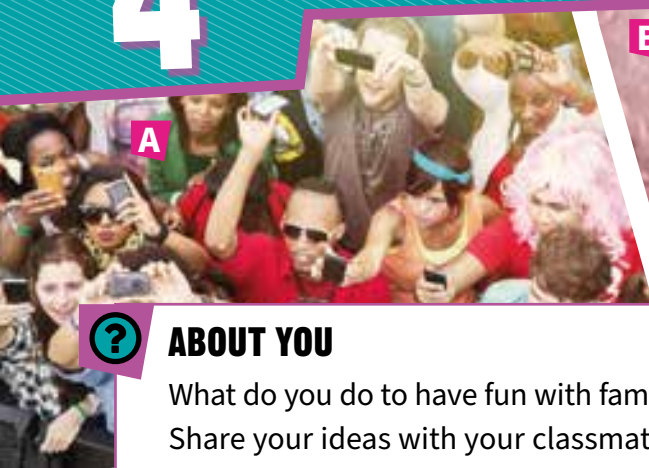
SPEAKING

1 In pairs, take turns to ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you like different kinds of music? What are they?
- 2 Do you like different musical instruments? Which ones?
- 3 Which of these different types of music do you like best?
- 4 Which instrument would you like to play?

Music lessons are in the ¹
School lessons are in the ²
Name of Music School: ³
Phone number: ⁴
Head's name: Ms ⁵
Email address: ⁶

4 IT WAS AWESOME!



? **ABOUT YOU**
 What do you do to have fun with family and friends?
 Share your ideas with your classmates.

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Adjectives

- Look at the photos. Where are the people and what are they doing?
- Listen and match the conversations to the photos.
 Conversation 1 _____ Conversation 2 _____ Conversation 3 _____
 Conversation 4 _____ Conversation 5 _____ Conversation 6 _____
- Listen again. How did the speakers feel about their experiences?
 Complete row A of the table with the conversation numbers.
- Now complete row B of the table with the adjectives in the box.
 Listen and check. Then repeat.

EP amazing awesome brilliant fantastic fine great horrible
 lovely OK perfect really good terrible wonderful

		😞	😏	😊	😄
A	Conversation				1
B	Adjectives	.....	.....	.....	amazing
	

5 Choose the correct words to complete the conversations. In pairs, practise the conversations. Then make some new conversations together.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 0 A: I'm not in the basketball team anymore.
B: Oh no! That's <u>terrible</u> / fantastic! | 3 A: Look at my lunch!
B: That's horrible / excellent – don't eat it! |
| 1 A: I've got a new mobile phone.
B: Wow! That's fine / brilliant! | 4 A: Are you enjoying the film?
B: It's OK / lovely. It's not great. |
| 2 A: My sister's getting married.
B: That's great / OK! | 5 A: I got top marks in my test.
B: That's wonderful / terrible, well done. |

1 Look at the examples.

Positive

I **was** at my sister's wedding.
 We **were** at a barbecue near
 the beach.
 All the bands **were** fantastic.

Negative

The weather **wasn't** great.
 You **weren't** in class.

Questions and short answers

Where **were** you last night?
 How **was** the food?
Were you at the football match? Yes, I **was**.
Was it fun? No, it **wasn't**.

Now choose the correct words in the box to complete the rules about the past simple of *be*.

- 1 We use _____ with *I/he/she/it*.
- 2 We use _____ with *you/we/they*.
- 3 We add _____ to *was/were* to make negative sentences.
- 4 We put _____ / _____ before the subject to make questions.

was
 were
 n't

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 138

2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 My school lunch *was / were* nice yesterday.
- 2 My brothers *was / were* late home this evening.
- 3 That TV programme *wasn't / weren't* very good!
- 4 We *wasn't / weren't* too tired after our walk.
- 5 What *was / were* the time when you got home?
- 6 How many people *was / were* on the trip?

3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 All my friends was here on Saturday.
- 2 I like your new shoes! Are they expensive?
- 3 Yesterday I were at a friend's house.
- 4 That is an awesome party last night!

4 Complete the conversation with *was / wasn't, were / weren't*.

Suzy: Hi, Max. Where ⁰ were you yesterday afternoon? You ¹ _____ at school.

Max: Oh hi Suzy. No, I ² _____. I ³ _____ at a big athletics competition at the city sports club.

Suzy: Really? ⁴ _____ it fun?

Max: Yes, it ⁵ _____. It ⁶ _____ amazing! I ⁷ _____ the winner of the 800 m race!

Suzy: Fantastic! ⁸ _____ your parents there?

Max: No, they ⁹ _____. They ¹⁰ _____ at work. But my brother ¹¹ _____ there with his video camera, so it ¹² _____ fine!

PRONUNCIATION | *was / were*

33

- 5 Listen to some sentences from the conversation and repeat them. Now practise the conversation with your partner. Take turns to close your book and see if you can remember it.

6 Complete the questions with the words in the box. Then answer them.

- 1 _____ your dinner like last night?
- 2 _____ your friend late this morning?
- 3 _____ you in this class last year?
- 4 _____ your last haircut?

Was Were
 What was
 When was

Write three more questions to ask your partner. Tell the rest of the class the answers.

READING

- 1 Read the reviews of the activity days. Three of the reviews have four stars and one has five stars. Which one do you think has five stars?

ACTIVITY DAYS

LATEST
REVIEWS

34



Fun day!

Fantastic!

I'm really interested in cars, so this was an amazing day for me. I still can't believe that my first driving experience was in a Lamborghini and an Aston Martin! I've got a video of the whole thing. I'm glad about that, because on the day there's no time to look at the cars properly. As soon as you finish, the next driver gets in. I was a bit upset about that. **Liam**



I was very surprised to get this activity day for my birthday, but indoor skydiving was awesome! I can't wait to go again. Before the activity, there are lots of hand signals to learn, so you can communicate when you're flying in the wind tunnel. You can't speak in there! At first, I was worried about forgetting them, but it was fine. **Jade**

Amazing trip!

This was my first time in a helicopter, and I was quite nervous. I wasn't sure I wanted to do it. But there was no need to be afraid – in fact, I was sorry when it was over! I was in the front seat and the view was fantastic. The only problem was that we were back on the ground after only ten minutes. **Mia**

- 2 Read the texts again and answer the questions with a phrase or short answer.

- 1 What does Liam like a lot?
- 2 What wasn't Liam able to do on his activity day?
- 3 Was Jade's activity day a present?
- 4 What was Khrystyna's favourite part of the day?
- 5 Were the photos cheap?
- 6 Was Mia nervous after flying in a helicopter?



TALKING POINTS

Would you like to do an activity day?
What presents do you get for your birthday?
What do you give other people?

Really special!

What a brilliant afternoon! First, there was a talk about the history of chocolate. Then it was time for the best bit – making and decorating our own chocolates! The teachers were lovely and happy to help with any problems. There were photos to buy afterwards, but they were really expensive. I was angry about that. **Khrystyna**

VOCABULARY

Emotions

- 1 Look at the texts. Find and underline the words in the box. Match some of them to the emojis.

EP




afraid angry glad happy interested nervous sorry surprised upset worried

- 2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm so *sorry* / *afraid* you're not feeling well!
- 2 My little brother's crying. He's *upset* / *glad*.
- 3 I'm painting now, and I'm really *happy* / *surprised*.
- 4 I'm really *glad* / *angry* you're here! I missed.

LISTENING

1 Read questions 1–5 and look at the pictures. What can you see in them?

35  2 Listen to five short conversations. Choose the correct picture (A, B or C).

1 What was Bella happy with at the party?



2 Where is Kyle's ticket?



3 What was the weather like?



4 How much was the boy's T-shirt?



5 Where was the girl on Saturday?



WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A description of a party

GET READY Read the text and answer these questions. Whose party was it? Where was it? What time was it? What food was at the party?

I was at my best friend's birthday party last month. Her name's Isabella and the party was at her house on 12th May, from 6 p.m. to 9 p.m. It was a really big party. All her friends and family were there, and we were so excited about it. There was lots of food – pizza, salad and, of course, cake! It was all really nice. Isabella was nervous before the party, but she was fine when everyone was there. It was a really brilliant evening!

Now find all the adjectives. Which describe the party and the food, and which describe how the people felt?

Put the adjectives in the correct place.

- 1 There was some food at the party. (nice)
- 2 There were lots of people. (happy)
- 3 This is music! (terrible)
- 4 Jake is a dancer. (brilliant)

PLAN Make notes about a party you were at. Use the questions in *Get ready* to help you.

WRITE Write a paragraph about the party.

IMPROVE In pairs, read each other's stories. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their paragraph better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your paragraph.

LIFE SKILLS COLLABORATION

REACHING AGREEMENT

1 Read the sentences. Answer the questions.

Let's agree to disagree.

We can find a 'win-win' solution.

- 1 What do you think the sentences mean?
- 2 Which sentence do you prefer? Why?

- 3 When do you need to make decisions? For example, think about doing a class project or going to an event.

2 Do you ever disagree with friends about these things? How do you reach an agreement?

What to do at the weekend

What to buy a friend for their birthday

3 Read the problems on Danny's page quickly and write the names on the correct replies. Do you have any problems like these in your life?

4 Read the texts again. Which person/people has/have these problems?

Which person/people ...

- 1 has/have a problem with a family member?
- 2 has/have a problem at school?

- 3 hasn't/haven't got a lot of time?
- 4 wants/want to go to the cinema?

5 Complete the sentences with the **highlighted** words from the texts.

- 1 I don't _____ with the things my friend does in class. She doesn't listen to the teacher.
- 2 Do you agree or _____ with the idea?
- 3 I hope you _____ the film.

- 4 Can you give me some _____?
- 5 I'm _____. I can't go to the cinema...
- 6 Maybe you don't agree. In that _____, you can make your own plans.

6 Listen to Lola, Oscar and Daisy talking. What are they planning?

- a They are making plans to go to the cinema.
- b They are making plans for a surprise party.

- c They are making plans to study for their maths exam together.

7 Listen again and complete the sentences.

- 1 Lola thinks it's a good idea to get a _____.
- 2 Oscar thinks it's a better idea to get a _____.

- 3 Michael loves _____.
- 4 Oscar wants to _____.

8 Are the sentences in the *Useful language* box used for agreeing (A), disagreeing (D) or making suggestions (S)?



LIFE SKILLS

Reaching agreement

For two people to agree, you need to:

- listen carefully
- give your opinions calmly and clearly
- try to understand the other person's ideas before you decide what to do.



USEFUL LANGUAGE

I disagree **D**

How about a basketball shirt?

I have a better idea.

I agree.

I think a CD is a better idea than a book.

Help me, Danny!

Send me your
problems and I can
give my **advice**.

36

1 Dear Danny,
I want to go to see a film tonight, but my best friend wants to play basketball. We always play basketball and I'm bored! What can I do?
Regards,
Bored Best Friend

2 Dear Danny,
I have a problem. My best friend is often not nice to our maths teacher. She doesn't listen, she never does her homework and she says bad things about the teacher. I tell her to stop, but she gets angry with me. What can I do? Thanks for your help.
Unhappy Friend

A Dear _____,
It's important for you and your sister to **agree** because you haven't got a lot of time. Make a list of good things about each present to help you decide. Then go shopping and choose the present together. Try to find a win-win solution. **Enjoy** shopping and happy birthday to your brother! **Danny**

B Dear _____,
This is often a problem with friends and family. You can talk to your friend and ask to do something different, or you can talk to your friend about how you feel. Maybe agree to **disagree**. In that **case**, go to the cinema alone or with another friend.
Good luck! **Danny**

3 Dear Danny,
It's my brother's birthday at the weekend. My sister wants to buy him a T-shirt, but I want to buy him a book. We have only £15 and only one day to go shopping. What do you think?
Birthday Brother



C Dear _____,
I think it's a good idea to talk to your friend and tell her to stop. You can tell her that it's important to be good in class and that you don't like what she's doing. Is she finding maths difficult? Does your friend need help studying? Listen carefully to your friend to help her. Enjoy your lessons at school!
Good luck! **Danny**

PROJECT

Planning
a surprise party

In small groups, plan a party to surprise a friend.

- Think about:
 - who the party is for
 - when the party is
 - where the party is
 - what food and drink you want
 - what you need to do
 - what you need to buy
 - what music to play
 - what activities you can do at the party
- Design an invitation for your party.
- Present your invitation to the class.

TALKING POINTS

How about YOU? Are you organising a party for someone? Do you normally buy presents for your friends? Do you and your friends always agree? What do you do then?

VOCABULARY

1 Match the sports equipment words to the photos. Then match the equipment to the sports in the box.



ball bat racket stick

baseball basketball
hockey rugby table tennis
tennis volleyball

2 Put the words into the correct column.

Food	athletics	cereal	cheese	classical music	cold meat	cycling	dessert		
Music	dinner	drums	fish	fruit	gymnastics	keyboard	hip-hop	jazz	
Sport	juice	opera	piano	pop	rap	rice	rock	sailing	saxophone
	snowboarding	sopilka	soul	tomatoes	vegetables	violin			

3 Complete the missing word in each sentence.

- I want to m_____ a music video with my dad.
- He likes cooking a_____. He doesn't like cooking with other people.
- That's a f_____ idea. I think it's really good.
- My sister is u_____ because she is sick.
- Bands go on t_____ when they make a new album.
- That's b_____ news about the tennis match. Great!
- I always get d_____ before breakfast.
- My brother doesn't like exams. He gets very n_____.

GRAMMAR

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences 1-4. Then correct the mistakes in the sentences 5-8.

- I *sing / am singing* in the school hall on Fridays.
- The film *was / were* very exciting.
- I usually *stay / stay* usually at home.
- That *is / was* a very good barbecue last Sunday.
- I go often with my friends to the cinema.
- How are you? I write to give you some news.
- The weather *amazing* last month.
- I like go to school because I like my teachers.

2 Put the words in order to make questions. Then match the questions to the answers. Complete the answers with the verb in the correct tense.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 making / what / you / are / ? | 3 your / you / now / are / doing / homework / ? |
| 2 play / you / Tuesday / do / tennis / every / ? | 4 your / brother / playing / now / football / is / ? |
| a Yes, I am. I _____ (do) my maths. It's really difficult! <input type="checkbox"/> | c Yes, I do, and I often _____ (play) on Saturdays as well. <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b No, he's with his friends. They (watch) a film at Tom's house. _____ <input type="checkbox"/> | d I _____ (make) my breakfast. I usually _____ (have) bread, but today I _____ (have) a bowl of cereal with fruit. <input type="checkbox"/> |

LISTENING

38 **1** Listen to five short conversations. Choose the correct picture.

1 What time do they agree to meet?



2 Which instrument does Mona need to practise tonight?



3 What is Finley's brother doing?



4 Where were they in the morning?



5 What does the girl want to have for dinner?



READING

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1 Which country does the game come from?
- 2 How old is the game?
- 3 How many players are there in the game?
- 4 What do the players hit the ball with?
- 5 What two things in *tamburello* are like the game of tennis?

SPEAKING

1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 name / your / what's / ?
- 2 you / where / live / do / ?
- 3 old / you / how / are / ?
- 4 favourite / what's / sport / your / ?

2 In pairs, talk about music. Take turns to speak.

- What kind of music do you listen to?
- When do you listen to music?
- Who is your favourite singer / band?
- Tell me something about your singer / band.

39

Tamburello

Tamburello is a sport from the north of Italy. It is a very old sport. The first games were in the 16th century. Players can play the game inside or outside.

It's a team sport and there are usually three players in each team. Players hit the small tennis ball to players in the other team. But they don't use bats or rackets to hit the ball. They use tambourines. Have a look at the photo. Yes, the players have got tambourines in their hands. The Italian word for tambourine is *tamburello*. That's how the sport gets its name.

A player in one team hits the ball over the line to players in the other team. A player in the other team hits it back. When a player doesn't hit the ball or when the ball goes too far, the other team wins a point. There are four points in each game. That's the same as the points in tennis. When players play a match, they usually play 13 games.



5 MOMENTS IN HISTORY

VOCABULARY AND READING


ABOUT YOU

What famous people do you know from history?
Why are they still famous today?
When and where were they born?

Historical events

1 Look at the photos in the quiz. Can you name any of these people? Do you know, or can you guess, why they are famous?

2 Match the photos to the quiz questions. Then complete the quiz questions with the words in the box.

40  3 In pairs, do the quiz. Choose A, B or C. Listen and check.

4 In pairs, Student A, name a photo. Student B, say what happened.

Student A: *Photo J*

Student B: *Princess Olha ruled.*

climbed	crossed	
opened	painted	played
published	received	
recorded	ruled	travelled



Women in history



1 Princess Olha _____ Kyivan Rus

- A the 9th century.
- B 10th century.
- C the 11th century.

2 Marie Curie _____ the Nobel Prize in chemistry

- A in December 1911.
- B in December 1925.
- C in December 1950.

3 The first American woman, Sally Ride, _____ into space

- A on 12th August 1961.
- B on 3rd April 1962.
- C on 16th June 1963.

4 Amelia Earhart _____ the Atlantic Ocean, alone, by plane

- A in 1932. B in 1941.
- C in 1950.

5 Junko Tabei _____ Mount Everest

- A on 16th May 1975.
- B on 5th April 1977.
- C on 12th May 1980.

6 Frida Kahlo _____ her self-portrait with parrots

- A in 1920. B in 1935.
- C in 1941.

7 Serena Williams _____ her first match at Wimbledon

- A in 1996. B in 1998.
- C in 2000.

8 Coco Chanel _____ her first shop in Deauville, France

- A in the 18th century.
- B in the 19th century.
- C in the 20th century.

9 J. K. Rowling _____ her first Harry Potter book

- A in March 1985.
- B in June 1997.
- C in July 2004.

10 Ella Fitzgerald _____ her first song

- A in 1928.
- B in 1930.
- C in 1936.

1 Look at the answers to the quiz again. Complete the rules for *in* and *on*.

We use *in* / *on* for the date and the day.
 *12th August 1961* / *Tuesday*.

We use *in* / *on* for months, years and centuries.
 *January* / *2004* / *the 20th century*.

2 In pairs, test your partner.

A: *In 1998*

B: *Serena Williams played her first match at Wimbledon.*

Past simple: regular verbs

3 Read the sentences. Look at the letters in **red**. What do we add to the verbs to make the past tense?

Ada Lovelace completed **d** the first computer program in 1842.

NASA's Curiosity Mars Rover landed **ed** on Mars on 6th August 2012.

4 Look at the verbs in the table. Write the past simple forms of the verbs in the box in the correct column.

clean	complete	cook	copy
enjoy	finish	help	invite
join	paint	phone	plan
play	prefer	study	want

climb →	change →	carry →	stay →	stop →
climb ed	chang ed	carri ed	stay ed	stop ped
<i>cleaned</i>				

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 139

5 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs and *in* / *on*.

1 I (cook) dinner Sunday.

3 My dad (play) tennis June 1988.

2 My mum (study) history 2001.

4 She (invite) us to her party 8th May.



PRONUNCIATION | Past simple -ed



6 Listen to the *-ed* sounds. Sometimes we add another syllable when we say the *-ed* and sometimes we don't.



Put the verbs from the box in Ex. 4 into the correct column. Listen, check and repeat.

finished: *ed* is NOT an extra syllable

waited: *ed* IS an extra syllable

7 Choose the correct verb forms.



1 She *watches* / *watched* TV and likes playing on the computer.

3 I really *enjoy* / *enjoyed* the weekend. I don't want to go home tomorrow.

2 We really *want* / *wanted* to go to skiing last week, but there wasn't any snow.

4 I *need* / *needed* a new coat. Can we go shopping this afternoon?

8 Make six sentences about you using the past simple and *in* or *on*. Use the words in the box to help you.

climb	complete	cross	dance	finish
join	open	paint	record	reveal
				visit

READING

1 Look at the photos.

What do you know about London today?

How was it different in the 17th century?

Discuss your ideas with your partner.

2 Read the article and check your ideas from Exercise 1. Match the four photos A–D to paragraphs 1–4.

3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences about the Great Fire of London.

- 1 London is *bigger* / *smaller* today than it was in the 17th century.
- 2 The fire started in a bread shop early on *Saturday morning* / *Sunday morning*.
- 3 A lot of people lived in houses made of *wood* / *stone*.
- 4 The houses burned *quickly* / *slowly*.
- 5 5th September was the *first* / *last* day of the fire.
- 6 The Tower of London is *more than* / *less than* 350 years old.
- 7 St Paul's Cathedral is a(n) *new* / *old* stone building.

The Great Fire

43

1 Saturday 1st September 1666 was a normal day in London. The city was smaller than it is today, but the little shops were busy and there were lots of people in the streets.

2 Just after midnight that night, something happened in a bread shop in Pudding Lane to change everything. A small fire started in the building. Most people lived in small houses in those days. These houses were very close to each other. The floors at the bottom of the houses were made of stone, but the rest of the houses were made of wood. The fire moved first to the houses and shops on each side of the bread shop, jumping from roof to roof. The buildings started to burn, and the fire travelled quickly from house to house, from shop to shop and from street to street. The fire moved very fast through the buildings and burned for three days, from Sunday 2nd until Wednesday 5th September.

3 After the fire, the buildings made of wood were not there anymore, but many churches and the famous castle, the Tower of London, were still there because they were made of stone.

4 So the people of London decided to make new buildings of stone. You can still see many of those stone buildings from after the fire in London today. One of the most famous is a church. It's called St Paul's Cathedral.



1 Match the words in the box to the meanings.

castle	cathedral	ceiling	church	floor
palace	roof	square	stairs	statue

- This is on the top of a building and keeps out the sun and the rain.
- This is a large house where rich or important people can live.
- This is a model of a person / animal, made of wood / stone.
- This is a very large building that Christians use.
- These are steps to move up and down in a building.
- This is an open space in the centre of a town.
- We walk on this part of a room.
- This old stone building has large walls and towers.
- This part of a room is above our heads.

2 Complete the table with the words from Ex. 1.

Places / things in a city	Parts of buildings

3 Add other words that you know to the table.

LISTENING

1 Listen to the radio programme *Living History – I was there!*

Dave Brown is talking to Janet about a moment in history she remembers. What moment does Janet remember?

2 Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- Janet lived with her family in a house in Manchester.
- There were computers but no mobile phones in the 1960s.
- Black and white televisions only show black and white pictures.
- Janet's dad telephoned the shop to buy a colour television.
- The first programme they watched in colour was sport.



TALKING POINTS

Which of the places or things in a city in Ex. 1 are in your town?
Which buildings are made of stone / wood?
Which do you think is better, a building made of stone or wood? Why?



SPEAKING

1 Work in small groups. The Great Fire of London was an important moment in British history. Think of/find out about an important moment in the history of your country. Talk about it and prepare a presentation.

- What's the important moment?
- When was it?
- What happened?
- Why was it important?

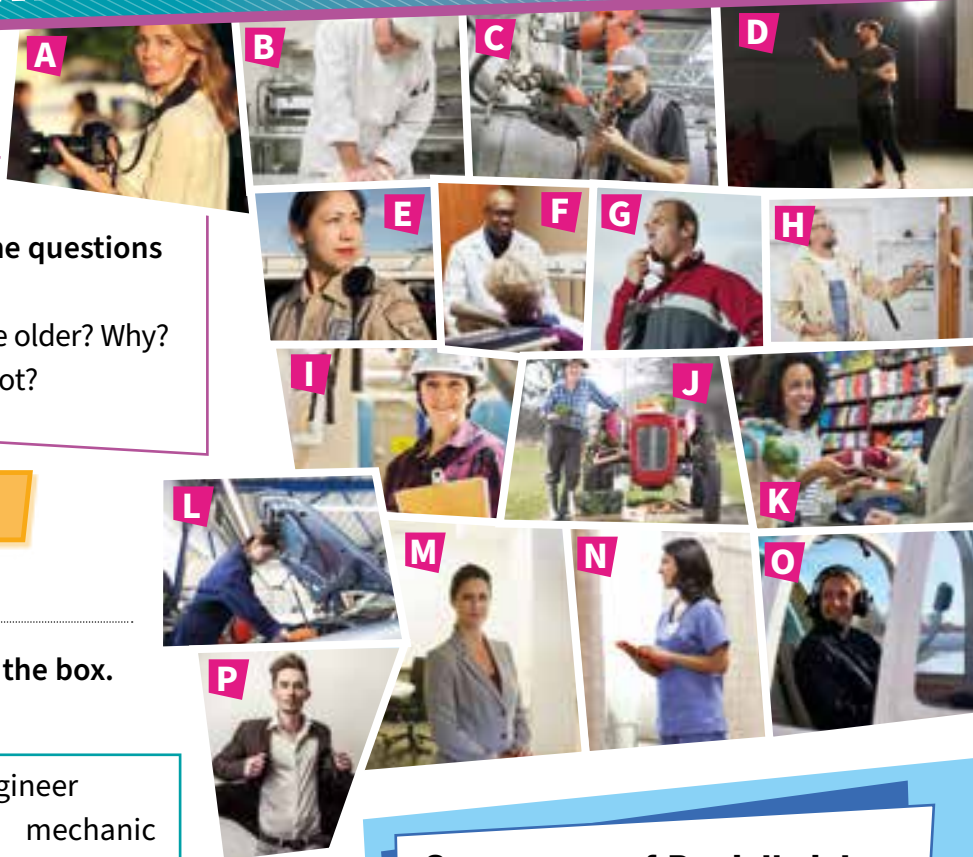
2 Tell the class about your moment in history.

A: *Our important moment from history is* B: *It happened on (date) in (place).*

A: *These are some of the things that happened. There was ...* B: *It was an important moment because ...*

3 In your groups, draw a timeline and put your events on the timeline.

6 WHAT A GREAT JOB!



ABOUT YOU

03 Watch the video and answer the questions about you.

What job do you want to do when you're older? Why? What job don't you want to do? Why not?

VOCABULARY AND READING

Jobs

45 **1** Match the photos A–P to the words in the box. Listen and check. Then repeat.








actor artist cook dentist engineer
factory worker farmer manager mechanic
model nurse photographer pilot police
officer shop assistant sports coach

2 Choose five of the jobs and say what the person does. In groups, say your sentences and see if the students can guess the job.

A: *This person helps you when you want to buy something.*

B: *Is it a shop assistant?*

Some more of Daniel's jobs

-  Wedding planner, Las Vegas
-  Mechanic, Detroit
-  Factory worker, Pennsylvania
-  Oil engineer, Texas
-  Cheesemaker, Wisconsin
-  Sugar maker, Vermont
-  Fisherman, Maine

50 weeks, states, different jobs

47

When Daniel Seddiqui was 26, he travelled around the USA for a year. He visited all 50 states and worked for a week in each one. He didn't use buses or planes – he travelled by car from job to job. He earned money for every job he did, but hotels were too expensive for him. He usually stayed in his boss's home, or with one of the other workers. 'People were very good to me,' says Daniel. 'They looked after me really well.'

But why did Daniel do this? And did he enjoy it? 'Yes, I did! I wanted to travel and learn about my country,' he says. 'And I wanted to try lots of different jobs.'

Things weren't always easy for Daniel. In week 7, he worked as a farmer in Nebraska. 'The days were long, and I got really dirty,' he says. In week 38, he was a cook in a fish restaurant in Maryland. 'That was really hard! Often I didn't even have time to get a drink of water.'

Other jobs were fun. He worked at a theme park in Florida and as a model in North Carolina. He was a football coach in Alabama. In Alaska, he was a photographer. 'That was great. Alaska is a very beautiful place,' says Daniel.



3 In groups, look at the adjectives in the box. Say which jobs they apply to.

boring difficult easy fun interesting



PRONUNCIATION Three-syllable words



4 Listen and repeat the words. Then put them into the correct column.

afternoon assistant difficult engineer expensive
interesting manager mechanic understand

0oo	o0o	oo0
	assistant	afternoon

5 Look at the title of the article and the photo. What do you think the article is about? Read it once to check your ideas. In pairs, answer the questions.

Which jobs from Exercise 1 did Daniel do?
Where did he do them?

Why do you think he chose those jobs?
Would you like to do any of these jobs?

GRAMMAR

Past simple: negatives and questions

1 Look at the examples in the table and complete the rules with *did* / *didn't*.

Negatives	Questions	Short answers
He didn't use buses or planes.	Why did Daniel do this?	Yes, he did .
I didn't even have time to get a drink of water.	Did he enjoy it?	No, he didn't .

We use _____ and the main verb in the infinitive in negative sentences.

We use _____ and the main verb in the infinitive in questions.

We use _____ or _____ and leave out the main verb in short answers.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 140

2 Match the questions to the answers.

- How did Daniel travel from job to job?
- Did Daniel like being a farmer in Nebraska?
- Did Daniel work at a theme park in Florida?
- What did Daniel do in Alaska?

- He worked as a photographer.
- By car.
- No, he didn't.
- Yes, he did.

3 Tick (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

- I finished my homework at 6 p.m. last night.
- I cooked the dinner on Saturday.

- I climbed a mountain during my last holiday.
- I watched a film on TV last night.

4 Find and correct the mistakes with the past simple.

- 1 Did you enjoyed yourself on holiday?
- 2 Tom don't talk to me for very long at the party.

- 3 I don't want to go to my class yesterday.
- 4 Did you remembered my birthday?

5 Make questions. Then ask and answer with a partner.

- 1 / play any sport last week?
- 2 / visit anywhere interesting last month?
- 3 Which school clubs / join last year?

- 4 / answer a question in your last lesson?
- 5 What date / start school this year?
- 6 When / last travel to another country?

READING

- 1 Read the article quickly. Where did Nina and Julia do work experience?

48

STUDENTS AT WORK!

Nina and Julia are 14 years old and go to school in London. But they weren't at school last week – they were doing work experience. This is when young people spend a few days doing a job. They don't earn money, but they work hard and learn about the world of work. Nina's job was in a café and Julia worked for a TV company. We asked them to tell us all about it.



Nina: I was really happy about working in a café, because I'd like to be a cook one day. But I didn't do any cooking at all. Instead I served food and drinks to the customers, cleaned the tables and washed the floor. The café opened at 7 a.m. and closed at 6 p.m., but my working hours were 6 a.m. to 2 p.m. The staff were friendly, but we didn't have much time for talking. We were all really busy!



Julia: I worked in the office of a TV company. At first, I was upset about that. My plan was to work in a TV studio, not in an office. But the staff were all very nice to me, and I learned a lot about the business. I started at 10 a.m. and finished at 6 p.m. In the morning, I opened all the letters. Then I helped my boss with different jobs. Sometimes I answered the phone. Other times he asked me to use the computer to look for information he needed. I was often so busy that I only had ten minutes for lunch!

- 2 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- From the introduction we learn that the girls
 - enjoyed their jobs.
 - worked in different places.
 - were sorry to go back to school.
- What work did Nina want to do at the café?
 - cleaning
 - cooking
 - serving food
- What does Nina say about her working day?
 - It was very long.
 - It started too early.
 - There was a lot for her to do.
- Why was Julia upset in the beginning?
 - She didn't want to work in an office.
 - She didn't like the people she worked with.
 - She knows nothing about the TV business.
- Julia often didn't have much time to
 - eat her midday meal.
 - answer the phone.
 - speak to her boss.

VOCABULARY Work

- 1 Look at the article and find the words in the box. Then match them to sentences 1–6.

EP

boss busy customers earn office staff

- This means you work hard and have lots to do.
- These people buy things in shops or cafés.
- This person tells you what to do at work.
- These people work for a business.
- This is a place where people work on laptops.
- This means 'get money for doing work'.




TALKING POINTS

What do you think about students doing work experience? Is it a good idea? Why? / Why not? What sort of work experience would you like to do?

2 Write sentences about Julia and Nina using the words in Ex. 1. In pairs, read them. Say *Right*, *Wrong* or *We don't know!* to your partner's sentences.

LISTENING


49  1 Listen to Joe talking about the job he did last week. Tick (✓) the correct picture (A, B or C).

0 Where did he work?



1 What did he do?



50  2 Listen and repeat. Work with a partner. One of you is Joe and the other is Joe's friend. Use phrases in Ex. 2 to make a conversation.

That's brilliant! Congratulations! Wow! Oh no! That sounds boring. Really?

A: *Where did you work?*

B: *I worked in the museum.*

A: *Wow! That's brilliant.*

2 What time did he start?



3 How did he travel to work?



4 How did he get the job?



WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE

A paragraph about work

GET READY Look at the article about Nina and Julia's work experience on page 38. Find full stops (.), capital letters (A, B, C) and apostrophes (').

Read the paragraph. Add full stops, capital letters and apostrophes.

PLAN Talk to someone you know who has a job. Ask them about what they did one day last week. Make notes using some or all of these verbs:

close enjoy finish open start stop travel use work

WRITE Write a paragraph about the person's day. Write about 50 words.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your paragraph and your partner's. Check for mistakes with punctuation.

Full stops – These are at the end of a sentence

Capital letters – Use these after a full stop. Also use them for names, days of the week and months, and for the word 'I'.

Apostrophes – These are for contractions (*I've got*) and for possessives (*Jane's dog*).

My friend sarahs got a job in a café in the centre of town the cafés called the silver fish on saturday, sarah started at 9.00 a.m. she cleaned the floors and served customers after that she helped the cook make soup it was really busy but sarah enjoyed the day

CULTURE

SATURDAY JOBS



1 Look at the photos. In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 What are the two jobs in the photos?
- 2 Do teenagers work for pocket money where you live? What jobs do they do?
- 3 What are some good things about being a dog-walker or doing a paper round?

2 Read the job offers. In pairs, discuss which one you think is the best.

3 Match the photos A and B to two of the job offers 1-3.

4 Read the job offers in Exercise 2 again. Answer the questions.

- 1 How many hours a week is the dog-walking job?
- 2 Is the dog-walking job for a company?
- 3 Where is the Saturday afternoon job?
- 4 How can you get more information about the Saturday afternoon job?
- 5 When is the paper round job?
- 6 Where do you take the newspapers on the paper round?

5 Complete the sentences with the **highlighted** words in the job offers in Ex. 2.

JOB OFFER – Saturday mornings	You can earn some ¹ You need to ² 2-3 small dogs.
Help Wanted – Saturday afternoons	You are ³ for plants, pets and small jobs. You need to ⁴ the cats.
Extra pocket money?	The job is doing a ⁵ You need to be ⁶

FACTFILE

Saturday jobs

In English-speaking countries, many teenagers have Saturday jobs.

Having a Saturday job helps teenagers:

- ★ plan their time
- ★ meet new people
- ★ make some pocket money
- ★ learn new skills
- ★ learn the value of money

JOB OFFER – Saturday mornings

Do you like animals? Do you like nature? Do you like walking? Do you want to earn some **pocket money**? Well, dog-walking is your dream job. And we pay well.

A small, family company is looking for young people to help **walk** dogs.

When: 2 hours on Saturday mornings

The job: Walk 2-3 small dogs

Where: Local parks

For more information, visit our Doggie Walks website.



2

**HELP
WANTED –**

Saturday afternoons

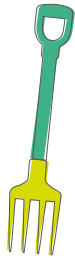
Are you free on Saturday afternoons over the school holidays? Do you want to earn some pocket money?

We are looking for a **responsible** person to help us at home on Saturday afternoons.

WHEN: 3–4 hours on Saturday afternoons

THE JOB:

- water house plants
- do simple garden jobs
- **feed** two cats
- clean bird cage
- help with small jobs around the house



For more information, send an email and tell us about you.

3

EXTRA POCKET MONEY? DO A PAPER ROUND!

A small company is looking for young people aged 13–14 to do paper rounds.

WHEN: Monday to Saturday. 1–2 hours in the morning.

THE JOB:

- › you need to take newspapers to people's homes and offices
- › you need to be **healthy**
- › it helps to have a bicycle
- › you need to get up early in the morning
- › you need to be responsible and leave newspapers on time

For more information about the job and the pay, send us an email and tell us about you and your experience.

51

52

6 Listen to Olivia and her dad talking about Saturday jobs. Tick the correct answers.

1 Olivia has experience doing



dog-walking



a paper round

2 Olivia has a on Saturday mornings.



piano class



guitar class

PROJECT

A job offer

In small groups, think of Saturday jobs. Write an offer for a job on Saturday mornings or afternoons.

- Think about the following:
 - what the job is
 - experience
 - morning or afternoon
 - number of hours
 - times
 - what you need to do
- Ask other groups questions about their job offers.
- Try to find someone from the other group for your Saturday job. Is anyone in the group a good person for the job? Why? / Why not?
- Tell the class about your job and who is/are a good person.

52

7 Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 Olivia wants a job on Saturday mornings.
- 2 Mrs Wilson hasn't got a garden.
- 3 Olivia sees a job offer in the newspaper.
- 4 The paper round job is in the centre of the town.
- 5 Mrs Wilson's son is a dog-walker.
- 6 Olivia walks the family dog.

**TALKING POINTS**

Which job would you prefer? Why?

04 NOW WATCH THE CULTURE VIDEO

7 AN EXCITING TRIP

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING



ABOUT YOU

Where do people in your country like to go on holiday?

Do you like busy holidays or quiet ones?

Holidays

1 Look at the photos. Match the activities to the words in the box.

EP

buy presents do water sports go camping go sightseeing
lie on the beach ride a bike stay at a hotel take photos

53

Listen and check. Then repeat.

54

2 Listen to Callum and Lottie talking about their holidays.
Answer the questions.

1 Where did Lottie go?

3 Did they enjoy their holidays?

2 Where did Callum go?

54

3 Listen again and look at the photos in Ex. 1. What activities did Callum and Lottie do?

4 In groups, say what you like / don't like doing on holiday.

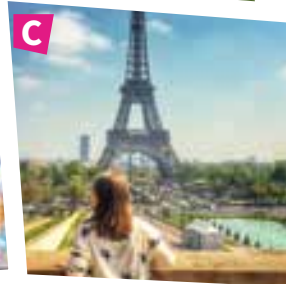
GRAMMAR

Past simple: irregular verbs

1 Read the sentences from Callum and Lottie's conversation and look at the **irregular past simple forms**. What verbs do they come from?

- 1 My friend Annabel **came** with us. *come*
- 2 We **swam** in the sea every day.
- 3 We **lay** on the beach.
- 4 We **did** lots of water sports.
- 5 We **rode** our bikes.
- 6 We **got up** late every day.
- 7 We **had** a really good time.
- 8 My parents **gave** me a new phone.
- 9 I **took** hundreds of photos.
- 10 I **went** to Istanbul, in Turkey.
- 11 I **saw** some interesting places.
- 12 I **bought** you a present.
- 13 I only **ate** one sweet.
- 14 We **could** walk to the beach in five minutes.

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 141



2 Close your book and listen. You will hear the irregular past tense. Say the verb it comes from.

3 Complete Callum and Lottie's conversation. Use the words and phrases in the box.

Did (x2) didn't get up take Yes, I did got up went

Callum: How was your summer holiday, Lottie?

Lottie: It was brilliant! I _____ want to leave!

Callum: _____ you _____ early every day?

Lottie: Of course not! We _____ late and we _____ to bed late.

Callum: _____ you _____ any photos?

Lottie: _____. I took hundreds of them!

4 Make conversations. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 A: _____ you _____ to the mountains for your holiday? (go)

B: No, we _____. We _____ to the beach.

2 A: _____ you _____ in the sea every day? (swim)

B: Yes, we _____, and we also _____ in the pool.

3 A: _____ you _____ any clothes? (buy)

B: No, I _____. But I _____ a lot of presents.

4 A: _____ you _____ a lot of ice cream? (eat)

B: Yes, we _____! And we _____ a lot of sweets.

5 A: _____ you _____ a good time? (have)

B: Yes, we _____. We _____ a great time.

5 Write a holiday conversation. Use the conversations in Ex. 3 and 4 for ideas.

6 Correct the mistakes with the past simple.

- 1 Yesterday, I go with my dad to a football competition.
- 2 I went shopping and bough lots of presents.
- 3 I had a party and all my friends come to my house.
- 4 I was happy because I get a bag and a T-shirt for only £10!
- 5 My friend gives me some money to buy an ice cream.

7 Complete the email. Use the verbs in the box in the correct form.

be buy can eat go have
love see stay take visit

8 Write an email to a friend about your last holiday. Look at the text in Ex. 7 for ideas.

From: Lee
Subject: Holiday Plans

Hi guys!

I hope your holidays ⁰were good.

I ¹_____ a great time in New York. It was a special holiday for my dad's 50th birthday. We ²_____ at a nice hotel called Alberto's. We ³_____ see lots of famous places from our bedroom window.

The food in New York was great. We ⁴_____ in a different restaurant every night. My favourite restaurant was Chinese.

We did lots of sightseeing and ⁵_____ some interesting museums. We ⁶_____ to the Statue of Liberty and the Empire State Building. We also ⁷_____ a show on Broadway. Of course, my mum ⁸_____ the large shops. She ⁹_____ new clothes for all of us. I ¹⁰_____ lots of photos. They're all online now – have a look!

CROSSING THE WORLD

ON A RICKSHAW TO SEE THE OLYMPICS



56

When Chen Guan Ming was a young man, he never travelled far from his farm in a small village in China. But now he is famous for following the Olympic Games around the world in his three-wheeled rickshaw. The story **began** in 2001, when he **heard** that the games were coming to Beijing. He **left** his village and cycled 90,000 km all over China, visiting 1,764 cities before finally arriving at the famous Bird's Nest Stadium. Then, he decided to travel to London for the 2012 Olympics. In 2010, he packed his things into his rickshaw and began his journey. He **slept** in his rickshaw and sometimes worked for food and money. Finally, he got to France, and **caught** a ferry to Britain. He only travels by boat or plane when there's no other choice. When he arrived in London, he **met** lots of tourists and **told** them his story. Some people didn't believe him. Then he showed them the stamps in his passport, and the photos of himself at places like the Eiffel Tower in Paris and Petronas Towers in Kuala Lumpur. After the London Olympics, Chen left his rickshaw in the UK and caught a flight home to plan his next trip – to the Rio Olympics. In 2013, he **flew** back to London. He **put** his rickshaw on a ship to Canada, and he **took** a plane there. A friend **paid** for his flight ticket. Then, he **got on** his rickshaw and **rode** to Brazil through the US, Mexico and Central America. The journey took three years. He **had** an amazing time in Rio and **made** lots more friends.



READING

- Look at the title of the article and the photos. Which countries do you think the man visited? Read the article about Chen Guan Ming and answer the questions.
 - What was Chen's job when he was young?
 - How far did he cycle to get to Beijing?
 - When did Chen leave home to go to London?
 - Where did Chen go after the London Olympics?
- Look at the irregular past tenses in red in the article. Write the infinitives.
- Do you know about any other long journeys? Would you like to do a journey like this?

VOCABULARY Holidays

1 Match the photos A-I to the words in the box.

airport	coach	ferry	flight
guidebook	map	passport	station
suitcase	ticket	tour guide	tourist

57 Listen and check. Then repeat.



2 Look at the verbs in the box and find them in the article.

EP Then complete the phrases using each verb once only.

arrive catch get on / off pack take travel by

a train a ferry
6
a flight a bus

a photo a long time your things a bus a train car bicycle at the airport
1 2 3 4 5
a train a bus a suitcase a bicycle a plane train bus in the city

3 In small groups, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you have a passport?
- 2 What do you always pack when you go on holiday?
- 3 Are guidebooks useful?
- 4 How do you travel to school/the shops?
- 5 When did you last travel on a coach/plane/train?

PRONUNCIATION Sounds and spelling

4 Match the words with the same vowel sound. Listen and check.

met caught plane flew coach map journey passport
group car catch work phone station bought slept

LISTENING

- 59 **1** Listen to Marion talking about a journey. How did she travel? Number the photos in the order you hear them. There is one extra photo that you don't need.
- 59 **2** Work in pairs, compare your answers. Then listen again and check. Why does Marion say *It's funny ...* at the end of her story?



TALKING POINTS

05 Watch the video. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- Where did you go on your last holiday? What did you see?
What did you do there? What did you eat?

SPEAKING

1 Work in pairs. Tell your partner a travel story.

Include this information in your story:

- When you went
- Where you went
- Who you went with
- How you travelled
- How long your journey took

Useful words

This happened ... months/years ago.
First, we ...
Then we ...
We took a ... / We caught a ... /
We went by bus/car.
Anyway ...

8

FAVOURITE PLACES

ABOUT YOU

What is your bedroom like?
What do you do there?



VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Bedroom furniture

60 **1** Match the photos A–K to the words in the box.

EP Listen and check. Then repeat.

armchair blanket bookshelf carpet
chest of drawers cupboard curtains
cushion lamp mirror photographs

PRONUNCIATION

/ɜː/ and /ɔː/

61 **2** Listen to the sounds /ɜː/ and /ɔː/.

62 Look at the words in the box. Put them in the correct column in the table. Listen and check. Then repeat.

bought curtains drawers first floor
furniture saw wall were work

/ɜː/	/ɔː/
bird	board
curtains	bought

3 What do you have in your bedroom?

4 Read. Which of the things from Ex.1 are NOT mentioned in the text.

Everyone needs a FAVOURITE PLACE

by Rebecca Grant

Today, I want to write about my favourite place. It's by the window in my bedroom. I've got a dark red armchair and a blanket. My grandma made the blanket for me when I was little. Next to the chair is a bookshelf with my favourite books, and there's also a little chest of drawers. On top of it, there are some stones I collected from the beach. I've got a few photographs on one side of the window and a mirror on the other side. I've got curtains on my window, too. Do you have a favourite place at home? Is it in your bedroom, or in the sitting room, or somewhere else? Maybe you don't have one, but you want to make somewhere you like special. Then here are a few ideas to help you create your special place.

63

- Light is important in a room. Is there natural light or do you need a lamp?
- You don't need a lot of furniture. A chair or an armchair is enough. Or you can put a few large cushions on the carpet in a corner. You don't really need anything else.
- What colours do you like around you? Use something like cushions to give colour to your bed. Posters and blankets work well for colour too.
- Now you can collect some favourite things to put in your special place.

Remember, no one is the same, so everyone's favourite place is different. Anyone can make their place special.



5 Read the article again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Rebecca has got three pieces of furniture in her favourite place. | 3 She says it's nicer to have light from a window. |
| 2 Rebecca's photographs are next to the mirror. | 4 She has ideas for a favourite corner without any furniture. |

GRAMMAR *someone, anyone, etc.*

1 Look at the table. Match the words in 1–3 to a–c.

1	everyone someone	anyone no one	2	everywhere somewhere	anywhere nowhere	3	everything something	anything nothing
These words are about ...		a a place.	b a thing.		c a person.			

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 142

2 Look at the article again. Find seven sentences with the words in Ex. 1.

3 Complete the sentences 1–5 with the pronouns with *-thing*, *-one* or *-where* and the sentences 6–10 with *anything*, *everything*, *nothing* or *something*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Some _____ gave me this hat. Do you like it? | 6 Do you remember _____ about the film? |
| 2 Can you think of any _____ to go today? | 7 The bookshelf is empty. There is _____ on it. |
| 3 I'm hungry, but there's no _____ in the fridge! | 8 It's very dark. I can't see _____. |
| 4 No _____ told me that you wrote stories! | 9 I learn _____ new in English every day. |
| 5 Every _____ in the class likes the colour blue. | 10 I don't need any help thanks. I can carry _____. |

4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Please tell me anything about your holiday. | 4 You can write everything you like. |
| 2 I don't have something to do next weekend. | 5 I can't see no one. |
| 3 You don't need to bring nothing else. | 6 I want to buy anything at the supermarket. |

5 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1

- A One cushion costs the same as two.
B Other shops are more expensive than Bright's.
C The shop is not open today.

2

- Why did Jackie write this email?
A to invite Tim on a bike ride
B to find out where Tim is today
C to ask Tim what's happening later

3

- A Jo doesn't need her desk lamp anymore.
B Jo would like to buy a desk lamp from someone.
C Jo can answer calls about her desk lamp during the day.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. In pairs, discuss the questions. What do you think these three people do? What do you think their favourite places are?
- 2 Read the article. Match the photos A–C to the artists in the article. What is each artist's favourite place?



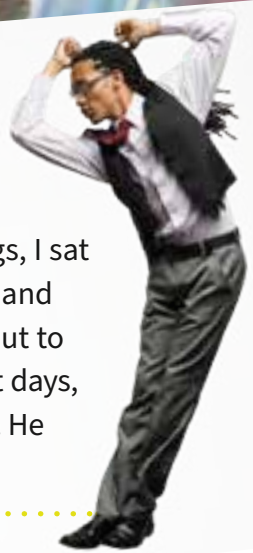
Artists' FAVOURITE PLACES

64



1 Gemma Blake, *painter*

Last summer, I spent four weeks on the north-west coast of Scotland in a little house by the sea. In the evenings, I sat by the open window and listened to the sound of the wind and the waves. It was wonderful. After breakfast, when I went out to paint and draw, I always had lots of ideas for pictures. Most days, I didn't see anyone except my neighbour. He was a fisherman. He really liked my work, and I sold him a drawing for his wall.



2 Daryna Vasyliv, *singer-songwriter*

I grew up in a small town in Ukraine. My grandma took me for walks and told me everything about the animals and plants there. When I was 19, I went to music school in Dnipro. At first, I loved the big city. Then I started writing my own songs about, guess what, nature in and around my home town. So, five years ago, I moved back, and now I don't want to live anywhere else.

3 Paul Davidson, *dancer*

I started dancing when I was very young. It was hard work, but I was good, and I danced with famous companies in the USA and Europe. I didn't really have a home, so when I had enough money I bought a tiny flat in London. I love it there. The world of dance is busy and tiring, and it's great to be able to get back to my flat. I close the door, lie on my bed and listen to music.

3 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 What did the fisherman buy from her?
- 2 What did Daryna learn from her grandma?
- 3 Why and when did she move away from home?
- 4 What does she write songs about?
- 5 Why did Paul travel to so many countries?
- 6 What does he do when he gets home?



TALKING POINTS

Where is your favourite place? Why? Describe it.

VOCABULARY Free-time activities

- 1 Match the verbs in box A to the words and phrases in box B. The verbs can be used more than once.

EP

A draw listen to paint play read
write

B a blog computer games a diary
the drums the guitar magazines
music pictures songs stories

2 Write eight sentences using words from box A and box B in Ex. 1.


Give your sentences to your partner and check each other's.

Everyone came to my place last night and we played computer.

LISTENING

65 **1** Listen to three teenagers, George, Abby and Jo, talking about their favourite places. Look at the photos A–C. Match the teenagers to their favourite places. Write the letters in column 1 of the table.

65 **2** Listen again. What do they like doing in their special places? Write the answers in column 2 of the table.



	1 Place	2 What they like doing there
George
Abby
Jo



WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A description of a favourite place

GET READY Read about Tom's favourite place. Where is it? What does he like doing there? Read again and underline *because* and *so*. Think about how Tom uses these words to join ideas in a sentence.

My favourite place is the beach. I like going there in the afternoons because all my friends go there then. I like feeling the sand under my feet, so I take off my shoes and walk along the beach. I love the sound of the birds and the sound of the sea. It's amazing!



Now join these sentences using *so* or *because*.

- I'm wearing my coat it's very cold.
- The bus didn't come on time, we were late for school.
- I was tired, I went to bed.
- Sorry, I can't come this evening I've got lots of homework.

PLAN Make notes about your favourite place. Where is it? Why is it special for you? What do you have there? What do you like doing there?

WRITE Write a paragraph of about 50 words about your favourite place. Use *because* and *so*.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own paragraph and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their text better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your paragraph.

SAFETY AT HOME



LIFE SKILLS

Safety at home

What is safety at home?

- Being careful with hot drinks or hot food
- Taking care with broken glass
- Never leaving things on stairs

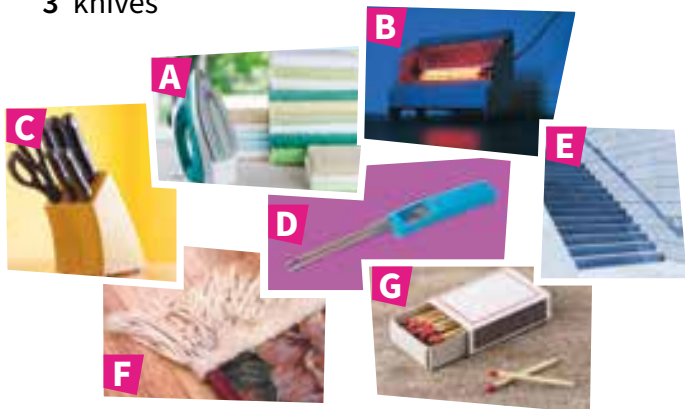
1 Look at the signs and answer the questions.



- 1 What do you think each sign means?
- 2 Where can you see each sign?
- 3 What does a fire extinguisher do?

2 Match the photos A-G to the words 1-7.

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 1 lighter | 4 heater | 6 stairs |
| 2 rug | 5 iron | 7 matches |
| 3 knives | | |



Talk about the things you have in your home. How can these things be dangerous?

3 Read the text quickly. Match the words in the box to the paragraphs. Do you follow these tips at home?

Burns Cuts Falls

TIPS TO BE SAFE AT HOME



Homes are wonderful places. We can rest, study, play games and spend time with our friends and family in our homes, but there are dangers there too. Here are some ideas to help keep safe and happy at home.

1

- > Be careful in the kitchen – hot food and hot drinks can burn you.
- > Cookers can be dangerous – take care.
- > Don't touch a hot **iron** or **heater**.
- > Be careful with matches and lighters.
- > It is a good idea to keep a **fire extinguisher** at home.



2

- > Don't leave books, bags, shoes or other things on the stairs.
- > Turn the light on when you use the stairs.
- > Don't run upstairs or downstairs.
- > Make sure **rugs** don't move.
- > Be careful when the floor is wet.
- > Don't stand on chairs or tables.



3

- > Use scissors and knives carefully.
- > Be careful with broken glass or mirrors.
- > Don't touch sharp, metal objects.



WHAT TO DO IN AN EMERGENCY



Keep a list of emergency telephone numbers in a special place at home or on your mobile phone. Are you hurt? Ask a parent or teacher for help, or call the emergency services.

4 Look at the text and choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

- 1 It's dangerous to _____ lighters and matches wrongly.
a touch b use c have
- 2 Cookers get _____. You can burn yourself.
a cold b hot c fire
- 3 It's a good idea to keep a _____ at home for emergencies.
a lighter b heater c fire extinguisher
- 4 It's not a good idea to leave _____ on the stairs.
a a rug b shoes and books c a desk
- 5 Be careful! You can _____ down the stairs.
a burn yourself b cut yourself c fall
- 6 It's dangerous to play with _____ and scissors.
a knives b rugs c glasses

5 Match the highlighted words in the text to the meanings.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 iron | a this cuts things easily |
| 2 heater | b you use this on clothes |
| 3 rug | c this warms the air |
| 4 sharp | d you can see yourself in this |
| 5 mirror | e this stops fires |
| 6 fire extinguisher | f a soft piece of material that covers the floor |



TALKING POINTS

Do you think safety is important at home and at school? How can you make schools and homes safer?

67 6 Listen to someone talking to a class at school. Choose the correct answers.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Who is visiting the class?
a a police officer b a firefighter | 2 What are the students learning to use?
a the internet b a fire extinguisher |
|---|---|

7 In pairs, try to remember the answers to these questions.

- 1 Why is it dangerous to use matches and lighters?
- 2 What can you do with a fire extinguisher?
- 3 Can hot soup be dangerous?
- 4 Why do you need to be careful with cookers, irons and heaters?
- 5 Is it a good idea to dry your clothes on heaters? Why / Why not?
- 6 What can you leave next to the phone or on your smartphone?



67 8 Listen again and check.

67 8 Now listen again and choose the correct words.



USEFUL LANGUAGE

- 1 It's not a *good / bad* idea to use lighters and matches without adults around.
- 2 You need to *use wrongly / be careful with* hot irons.
- 3 Some heaters and cookers *can burn you / put out fires*.
- 4 *It's good to have / Don't keep* emergency numbers next to the phone.

PROJECT

A safety leaflet

In small groups, write a leaflet about safety at home.

- Choose a title for your leaflet.
- Think of some ways to stay safe at home.
- Find some pictures.
- Choose a good design.
- Put it all together.
- Present your leaflet to another group. Take turns.

VOCABULARY

1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Don't walk on the *ceiling* / *floor*. The paint is wet.
- 2 My dad's a *mechanic* / *farmer*. He keeps sheep.
- 3 That's a beautiful *palace* / *statue* of two children.
- 4 I keep my *diary* / *passport* in my bag. I like to write in it every day.
- 5 There are lots of *bosses* / *customers* in the shop today. It's very busy.
- 6 We usually travel to London by *staff* / *coach*. It's cheaper than the train.

2 Match the verbs to the nouns.

cross draw join play
ride stay write

a bike a blog a club a match
pictures a river at a hotel

3 Match the words in the box to the sentences.

blanket building cook cupboard map office square stairs suitcase tourists

- 1 You can keep things in here.
- 2 You can find places in a city on this.
- 3 These are people on holiday.
- 4 Schools and houses are examples of this.
- 5 People work in this place.
- 6 This person does a job preparing food.
- 7 You can go up and down these.
- 8 You can pack your clothes in this.
- 9 This keeps you warm.
- 10 This is an open space in a town or city.

GRAMMAR

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Your birthday party was great. *Do* / *Did* everyone have a good time?
- 2 I went with my friends to the mountains and we *climb* / *climbed* the hill.
- 3 Yesterday was my birthday and I *had* / *got* a computer.
- 4 Please, can you bring *something* / *somewhere* to the picnic?

2 Say the past simple of the verbs.

- | | | |
|---------|---------|--------|
| 1 begin | 3 catch | 5 give |
| 2 buy | 4 fly | 6 meet |

3 Make sentences or questions about the past.

- 1 I / not / see / that film / last night.
- 2 They / can / cycle / 50 km / in a day.
- 3 you / get / an email / this morning?

Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 5 Last summer, I went to the United States. Some days it was hot, but on others it rain.
- 6 Today, we watched a football game, but my sister don't like it very much.
- 7 At my party, I danced, singed and ate and drank a lot of things.
- 8 I didn't do nothing special.

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 7 sleep | 9 ride |
| 8 swim | 10 take |

- 4 He / travel / to India / last winter.
- 5 We / not / stay / in a hotel / in London.
- 6 she / have / a computer / in her room?

READING

68

1 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1 Petra
Munich's great! Yesterday, we did some shopping after we finished sightseeing. Today, we went to a lake to do water sports. How's your holiday going?
Bella

What did Bella do first?

- A sightseeing
- B water sports
- C shopping

2 School trip to London, 26th June.
Put your names here if you want to come. £25, including coach tickets and lunch. Please pay Miss James by 28th May.

- A Students need to ask Miss James for information about the trip.
- B Students don't need to bring anything for lunch on 26th June.
- C Students don't need to pay for the school trip until 28th May.

3 Stella
Dad says there are no buses to the park today, and he can't drive me there. Can I come in your car?
Vicky

Why did Vicky write this message?

- A to say where Stella can catch the bus
- B to ask Stella for some help
- C to tell Stella how to get to the park

4 Hilltop Hotel. Swimming pool free for hotel guests – £5.00 for everyone else.

- A Everyone who wants to swim needs to pay £5.00.
- B Only hotel guests can use the swimming pool.
- C People staying here don't need to pay to swim.

5 Meeting – Tuesday 12.15 p.m.
Information for everyone doing work experience next term (see school website for a list of possible places to work)

This notice tells students

- A when they can find out about doing work experience.
- B about a change in the time of an important meeting.
- C to let the school know about their work experience plans.

6 Ethan
I'm so excited about coming camping with you and your family this weekend! Let me know if there's anything special I need to pack.
Liam

What does Liam want to know?

- A what he should bring.
- B where they are going.
- C who is coming camping.

SPEAKING

1 Put the words in order to make questions. In pairs, ask and answer.

- 1 live / you / flat / house / or / a / do / in / a / ?
- 2 rooms / home / how / your / there / many / are / in / ?
- 3 big / bedroom / or / your / is / small / ?

2 In pairs, talk about your room. Take turns to speak.

Tell me about your room.

The walls are white and the carpet is blue. There are some shelves with ...

9

CLOTHES AND FASHION

ABOUT YOU

What clothes do you like wearing in summer and in winter?
What are your favourite clothes? Why? What colour are they?

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Clothes

1 Match the photos of clothes A–L to the words in the box.

boots cap gloves jumper scarf socks suit
sunglasses swimming costume swimming shorts tie trainers



69 Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 Look at the photos. Who is wearing **pale** yellow clothes and who is wearing **bright** yellow clothes?

3 Which clothes in Ex. 1 are:

bright red? bright blue? black and purple? pink?
pale blue? pale grey? black? pale green?

4 Find pale and bright things in the classroom. Tell your partner.

5 Read the blog and match the clothes A–L in Ex. 1 to the people.

6 What are their best buys? Who doesn't have a best buy?

7 Read the blog again and answer the questions.

- 1 When did Samuel get his boots?
- 2 Did Megan need the jumper for her holiday?
- 3 Why did Ed get a suit and tie?
- 4 How is Isaac's holiday different from Megan's?
- 5 Amelia bought a swimming costume. Who else got one?

8 Think back over the last months. What was your best buy? Tell a partner.



WHAT'S YOUR BEST BUY?

70

Tell us about your cool clothes!

Samuel08 March 22 at 11.06

I just love clothes! My best buy last year was a pair of bright red boots. Cool! I wanted to get some like my brother's. His are green, but now I like mine best. I'm wearing them right now.

Ed14 March 22 at 13.13

Your clothes sound amazing! Mine are all so boring! Dad takes me shopping, and he buys me what *he* likes. Yuk. Last week he bought me a pale grey suit and a pale green tie for my cousin's wedding! They're just like his! Can you believe it! You're both so lucky.

Megan33 March 22 at 12.30

I got my best buy yesterday! My parents bought me warm things for my skiing holiday – socks, gloves and a scarf. Then I saw an amazing black and purple jumper with pockets. I don't really need it, but I bought it anyway.

Isaac60 March 22 at 13.25

Tell your dad it's great he wants to buy your clothes for you, but say *you* want to choose them sometimes. I got things for a holiday. I got pale blue swimming shorts and sunglasses. Oh, and black trainers – the best thing is a bright blue cap!

Amelia55 March 22 at 14.20

What great clothes – except the suit (sorry, Ed!). My sister and I always like the same clothes and our best buys last summer were swimming costumes! Mine is pink and hers is green. They look great!

GRAMMAR

Pronouns and determiners

1 Complete the sentences with the pronouns below.

hers his mine ours theirs yours

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 143

2 Find all the pronouns in the blog in Ex. 5.

3 Complete the sentences with pronouns.

- Hey you two, are these caps? I found them under the table.
- I hate going shopping for jackets with Ed. He doesn't like pockets on
- Samuel bought red boots not green ones, so I don't think those green boots are
- Are all these? We've got so many clothes!

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- I think you can buy a pair of trainers like my.
- I like it because it colour is bright blue.

5 Work in small groups. Ask and answer questions about the things you have on your desk. Use these words to help you.

Determiners

Pronouns

They're **my** trainers.

They're mine.

Are they **your** shorts?

Are they

It's **his** jumper.

It's

Are they **her** gloves?

Are they

It's **its** blanket.

-

It's **our** clothes blog.

It's

They're **their** costumes.

They're

5 Are these sunglasses? You dropped them.

6 Megan and Isaac both love the colour grey, so I'm sure those grey scarves are

3 The cap isn't my. It's my brother's.

4 The clothes on the bed are all your.

Is this yours? Yes, it's mine. No, it isn't mine. It's his / hers / theirs. It's long and thin and it's bright green. It's a crayon and you use it to draw.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos A–E. Which item of clothing do you like? Why?
- 2 Read the article and match the photos A–E to the paragraphs 1–5.

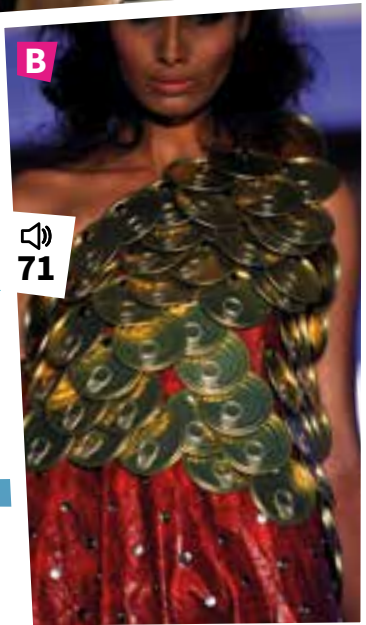


A

Are you wearing a pair of leather boots? Is your jumper made of wool? Are your shorts made of cotton? Sorry, that's not cool! You need to wear clothes made of something else.

THEY'RE MADE OF ...

WHAT ?



B

71

1 What do you do with your old tin cans? Do you recycle them? What happens to them next? Well, some people use them to make clothes. This dress is made of metal from old food cans. It looks good, but maybe it's a bit noisy when you move.

2 Cork comes from the outside of some trees in countries like Portugal and Spain. We usually find corks in the top of bottles, but you can use cork for other things too. Did you know you can use it to make clothes, handbags, hats and shoes? It's very popular in the big fashion houses.

3 What do you do with your plastic knives and forks after your picnic? Do you recycle them? Do you collect them? Some people do. In fact, they make jewellery out of them. Can you believe it? This designer has made hers into an amazing hat.

4 This dress won a prize in the yearly Toilet Paper Wedding Dress contest! You need a lot of toilet paper and, of course, you don't want to go out in the rain when you're wearing it.

5 Everyone needs shoes and lots of people drive cars. When you change your car tyres, why not use the old ones to make ... shoes! They are easy and cheap to make, and they don't look bad.



D



E



C

3 Read the article again and choose the correct answer.

The article is about:

- a what to do with old clothes and jewellery.
- b making things to wear out of unusual things.
- c how to make cheap clothes and jewellery.

4 Now answer these questions.

- 1 What is the dress in photo B made of?
- 2 What can you make with cork?
- 3 What is the hat in photo A made of?
- 4 Why should you be careful when you wear the dress in photo C?
- 5 What are tyres usually used for?



TALKING POINTS

Would you like to wear any of the clothes and jewellery from the article? Why? / Why not?
What do you do with your old clothes when you don't wear them anymore?

VOCABULARY

Materials

- 72 1 Match the photos A–F to the words in the box. Listen and check. Then repeat.

EP

cork cotton leather metal
plastic wool



- 2 Read the article on page 56 again. Find the words in Ex. 1.
3 What other unusual things can we use to make clothes, shoes or jewellery?
What are your clothes and shoes made of?

We can make shoes from plastic. My jeans and socks are made of cotton.



PRONUNCIATION | Words beginning with /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/

73

- 4 Look at the words and think about the first sound. Put the words into the correct columns. Listen and check. Then repeat.

change cheese chilli sea shirt
shoes shorts socks suit

/s/ sick	/ʃ/ shower	/tʃ/ chair

- 5 Now say this!

She sees six socks and seven shirts in the suit shop.

LISTENING

- 74 1 Listen to three people talking about their ideas for unusual things. Complete the table.

	Henry	Molly	Lauren
What is it?			
What is it made of?			

- 74 2 Listen again. Complete the sentence three times: once for Henry, once for Molly and once for Lauren. Choose *clothes* or *jewellery*.

Henry: It's a really good idea to make *clothes / jewellery* out of _____ because you've got _____ when you _____.

Molly: It's a really good idea to make *clothes / jewellery* out of _____ because you've got _____ when you _____.

Lauren: It's a really good idea to make *clothes / jewellery* out of _____ because you've got _____ when you _____.

- 3 In pairs, describe your idea for clothes made of unusual things.

It's a really good idea to ...

SPEAKING

- 1 Work in pairs. You are at a fashion show. Take turns to describe what your partner is wearing, what colour the clothes are and what they are made of.

And this is Daryna. Today he's wearing dark blue cotton trousers, bright red cotton socks and pale blue sandals made of cork. His shirt is ...

Henry



Lauren



Molly



10 BUYING THINGS



? ABOUT YOU
 Where do you do most of your shopping: online or in the shops? Which is better? What do you buy online and what do you buy in shops? Why?



VOCABULARY AND READING

Buying and selling

1 Match photos A–H to the words in the box.

bill	cash	discount	price
purse	receipt	sale	wallet

75 Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 Do the shopping quiz. Do you agree with the statements? Choose *yes* or *no* for each sentence.

3 Now check your answers on page 120.

4 In pairs, discuss your answers. Which of you:

- buys more online than in the shops?
- sometimes checks the bill?
- usually shops in the sales?
- carries cash in their purse or wallet?
- never asks shop assistants anything?
- spends more on clothes than their friends?

5 Put the words from Ex. 1 into the correct columns.

Countable nouns (C)	Uncountable nouns (U)

What kind of shopper are you? 76

Choose *yes* or *no* and find out.

1	I look at the price before I buy expensive things, like some shoes.	Yes / No
2	I'm not interested in any discounts. I want to buy the best.	Yes / No
3	I make sure I keep a few receipts from my shopping.	Yes / No
4	I don't buy much in the shops, only a few things a month.	Yes / No
5	I usually buy a lot of T-shirts and tops in the sales.	Yes / No
6	I often ask the shop assistant for some advice on what to buy.	Yes / No
7	I always check the bills when I eat in cafés or restaurants.	Yes / No
8	I never have any cash in my wallet or purse. I spend money quickly.	Yes / No
9	I don't buy CDs, but I share a lot of music with my friends.	Yes / No
10	I spend a bit of time every week looking at clothes online.	Yes / No

1 Read the sentences from the quiz. Then complete the rules with *countable*, *uncountable* or *countable and uncountable*.

I look at the price before I buy expensive things, like **some** shoes.
 I often ask the shop assistant for **some** advice on what to buy.
 I'm not interested in **any** discounts.
 I never have **any** cash in my wallet or purse.
 I usually buy **a lot of** clothes, like T-shirts and tops, in the sales.
 I share **a lot of** music with my friends.
 I make sure I keep **a few** receipts from my shopping.
 I spend **a bit of** time looking at clothes online.

- 1 We use **some** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.
- 2 We use **any** in negative sentences with _____ nouns.
- 3 We use **a lot of** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.
- 4 We use **a few** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.
- 5 We use **a bit of** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.

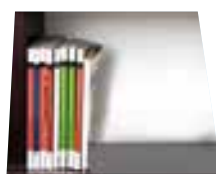
» **GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 144**

2 Match the photos A–D to the sentences.

- 1 He's got **a bit of** pizza.
- 2 He's got **a few** books.
- 3 He's got **a lot of** pizza.
- 4 He's got **a lot of** books.



3 Look at the photos. Complete the sentences with *a bit of*, *a few* or *a lot of*.



- 1 There are _____ socks on the bed.
- 2 There's _____ cake left.
- 3 There are _____ eggs in the fridge.
- 4 There are _____ books on the shelf.
- 5 He's got _____ money in his wallet.
- 6 I only ate _____ breakfast this morning.



PRONUNCIATION Weak forms: /ə/



4 Listen and repeat.

- 1 Can I have a bit of your burger? 2 He took a few photos. 3 A lot of people came.

5 In pairs, take it in turns to read the answers from Ex. 3.

6 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.



- 1 Please can you bring a pencils for drawing.
- 2 I want to buy a clothes. Can you help me?
- 3 I'm phoning to tell you a few good news.
- 4 You only need to bring a shorts and a T-shirt.
- 5 I'm sorry, but I haven't got some cash.

7 Write six sentences about your shopping habits using *some*, *any*, *a lot of*, *a few* or *a bit of*. In pairs, compare your sentences and check you are using the grammar correctly. Are any of your partner's statements true for you?

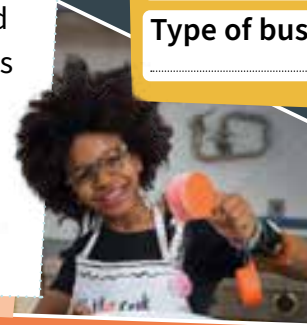
READING

- 1 What ideas can you think of for an online business? Discuss your ideas.
- 2 Look at the photos. Read and complete the profiles.

TWO YOUNG ENTREPRENEURS TO WATCH

78

Cory Nieves, or Mr Cory, is from the United States. He started his business when he was six years old because he was tired of getting the bus to school. He wanted to make some money to help his mum, Lisa, buy a car. First, Mr Cory sold hot chocolate in front of his home in New Jersey. He did well, and he began to sell other things too, like lemonade and cookies. Mr Cory and his mum tried a lot of different recipes for cookies. Then, one day they baked some perfect chocolate chip cookies. Now they bake a lot of different cookies and sell them on his website mrcoryscookies.com. You can also buy them from shops. The cookies are all natural, and Mr Cory and his mum still try the recipes at home before they sell them to customers. Mr Cory also works with organisations that help young people in the United States.



1

Name: _____

Country: _____

Name of business: _____

Type of business: _____

2

Name: _____

Country: _____

Name of business: _____

Type of business: _____

Bella Tipping is Australian. She got the idea for her website while she was on holiday with her family in the US, when she was 12 years old. Bella and her mum talked about their experience. Her mum said the vacation was great. When Bella didn't agree her mum was really surprised. Bella said a lot of things in the hotels and



restaurants were for adults not children. The places didn't think about what children wanted or needed. So, Bella started her website called Kidzcationz, where children can post their reviews of hotels and restaurants. Now, when families are planning their holidays and looking for places to stay and eat, they can look at the Kidzcationz website first to see which places are best for children.

3 Read the articles again and answer the questions.

- 1 What did Cory sell before he sold the cookies?
- 2 What do Cory and his mum still do?
- 3 What surprised Bella's mum after the holiday?
- 4 How can families use Kidzcationz?



TALKING POINTS

Which do you think is a better idea: Mr Cory's Cookies or Kidzcationz? Tell your partner.

VOCABULARY Phrases with *for*

- 1 Look at the sentences with *for*. Then match the phrases with *for* to the meanings:

EP

Cory sells his cookies **for just over a dollar each**.
People often buy cookies **for parties**.
People can order cookies online **for the next day**.

time the meaning of payment
occasion reason

Cory is well-known **for his website** Mr Cory's Cookies.

What's British English **for 'cookies'**?

2 Now match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1 People don't pay | a for 'vacation'? |
| 2 Australia is famous | b for her 14th birthday. |
| 3 What's another word | c for its beaches and amazing countryside. |
| 4 Bella went out with friends | d for the information on Bella's website. |

3 Complete the sentences. Use the words and phrases in the box.

entrepreneur its tasty cookies her birthday tomorrow two pounds

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 How many oranges can I buy for _____? | 4 You need to do your English homework for _____, please. |
| 2 I want to buy my sister some jewellery for _____. | 5 What's the word in your language for _____? |
| 3 This shop is famous for _____. | |

LISTENING

1 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 79
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Two friends are talking at the shopping centre. Why is the boy at the shopping centre?
A His computer's not working.
B He wants to visit a new shop.
C He always gets his shopping there. | 3 A woman is talking to her daughter about a present for her son, Matt. What is the present?
A something for Matt to wear
B something that Matt asked for
C something Matt needs for school |
| 2 A boy is talking about shopping. What did he buy?
A some fruit
B a dog
C some bread | 4 Two friends are talking at one of the friend's houses. What is the boy doing?
A He's reading his homework diary.
B He's looking at websites.
C He's doing his homework. |
| | 5 A teacher is talking to the class about a school trip. What is he telling them to do?
A get to school early B bring T-shirts
C wear warm clothes |

WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE A story

GET READY You're going to write a story about a problem you had buying something online, beginning with this sentence: *I wanted to buy a _____, so I looked on the internet. I found one on this fantastic website and ...* Read the story about Chris and his jacket on page 120. Find these words in the story: *after that, after (two weeks), (six days) later and finally.*

PLAN In your story, you tried to buy something online and there was a problem. Read the questions and make notes.

- 1 What did you want to buy? Who? Describe it.
- 2 How did you buy it? Did you use cash?

- 3 How long did it take to arrive?
- 4 What happened when it arrived? What was wrong with it? What did you do?
- 5 What happened at the end of the story?

WRITE Write your story in about 50 words. Try to link the events in your story with the words *after that, after, later and finally*. Start with the sentence in *Get ready*.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own story and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their story better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your story.

CULTURE

FACTFILE

Shopping

SHOPPING

1 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 Is your home or school near a shopping centre, street market or charity shop?
- 2 How are small shops and shopping centres different?

2 Read about shopping in different countries. Where do you do your shopping?

Shopping is an important part of people's lives. People often want to buy different things at good prices. In English-speaking countries, these types of shops are popular:

- ★ **Charity shops:** People give these shops clothes, books and other things they don't use or want anymore. These shops then sell these things to other people. Charity shops give the money they make to help others.
- ★ **Street markets:** In these open-air markets, people sell vegetables, cheese, honey and other local items.
- ★ **Shopping centres:** These are big, modern buildings with lots of shops and places to eat. In the United States, shopping centres are called 'malls'.

SHOPPING SURVEY 80

We asked three teens in three different countries 'Where do you do your shopping?' Here are their answers.

1 Mark, age 14 📍 Seattle, USA



Where: Northgate Mall, near Seattle
Why? I shop at Northgate Mall because there are lots of different stores and places to eat. I like listening to music and there is an excellent choice of **technology** stores in the mall. I also like Northgate Mall because it is near my house and I can walk or cycle there. I don't have a lot of pocket money, but I don't mind because I can look at things in different shops and go **window shopping!**

2 Karen, age 13 📍 Dublin, Ireland



Where: Charity shops on Camden Street, Dublin
Why? I haven't got a lot of pocket money, so I need to shop carefully. Every **penny** counts! One way I save money is shopping at charity shops. I love going shopping in Dublin and I really love Camden Street. Some of the charity shops only have clothes people **donate**, but others have jewellery, other **accessories and furniture**.

3 Pavlo, age 13 📍 Poltava, Ukraine



Where: Street market in Poltava
Why? I love cooking and once a week, I go with my mum and dad to the street market to get **fresh** fruit and vegetables. The food at the market is from **local** farms and my parents say the prices are great. We buy special acacia honey at the street market for making sweets. We also like drinking milk with honey on cold winter days.

3 Match the texts (1–3) in Ex. 2 to the photos (A–C).



4 Read the texts again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 There are not a lot of technology stores at the mall.
- 2 Mark walks or cycles to the mall.
- 3 Karen likes shopping in Camden Street.
- 4 Charity shops only sell clothes.
- 5 The street market in Poltava sells food from local farms.
- 6 Pavlo's family like tea with honey in winter.

5 Complete the sentences with the highlighted words in the texts.

- 1 When I go to the centre of town, I love going I don't buy anything.
- 2 I like buying fruit and vegetables at the Farmers' Market. That way, I help small businesses and farmers from the area.
- 3 I'm taking some clothes to the charity shop to them.
- 4 I love shopping for hats, scarves, sunglasses and other
- 5 I need to save every of my pocket money to buy a concert ticket next month.
- 6 This afternoon my mum is taking me to a store to see some different phones.

81 6 Listen to Gemma talking to two people about shopping. Tick the correct answers.

- 1 Leo likes shopping ...
 - a at charity shops.
 - b at the Farmers' Market.
 - c at the shopping centre.
- 2 Gemma's mum likes shopping ...
 - a at charity shops.
 - b at the Farmers' Market.
 - c at the shopping centre.

81 7 Listen again and match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 Leo is ... | a window shopping at the shopping centre. |
| 2 Leo likes ... | b three times a week. |
| 3 Leo goes shopping ... | c fruit and vegetables. |
| 4 Leo sometimes buys | d music magazines. |
| 5 Gemma's mum goes shopping ... | e 13 years old. |
| 6 She likes ... | f cheese. |
| 7 She always buys ... | g the local products and the prices. |
| 8 Gemma and her dad love ... | h at weekends. |



TALKING POINTS

Do you ever shop at any of the places in the survey?
Where is your favourite place to do your shopping? Why?

PROJECT

A survey

In small groups, prepare and carry out a shopping survey.

- Think of five or six questions for your shopping survey.
Ask questions about:
 - Where people shop
 - Why they shop there
 - When they shop
 - What they buy
- Write down the shopping survey questions.
- Compare your questions with another group's questions.
- Ask members of a different group your questions and record the results.
- After school, ask two friends in another class or family members about where they shop.
- Tell the class what you found out.

11

EATING OUT

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Food



ABOUT YOU

How often do you eat out? Which do you prefer – restaurant food or home-cooked food? What is 'fast food'? Do you ever eat it?

1 Look at the restaurant advertisements. Match the things in the photos A–M to the words in the box.

burger chicken legs cola cream fresh vegetables grapes lemonade
 mineral water pasta with tomato sauce mushroom salad soft drinks strawberry




Pizza PALACE

Come and have your party here in our party room – space for 30 people!

Party Menu

— PIZZAS —
 Cheese and tomato, Mushroom

or

— PASTA —
 with tomato sauce

— Dessert —
 Ice cream, (vanilla, chocolate or strawberry) – eat as much you want!

— SOFT DRINKS —
 Orangeade, lemonade, cola




**PRICE
 £10.00
 per person**

Call us six months before your party to book – we are very popular!

Birthday cake available.

Fantastic party room – 30 people

EASY BURGERS

We play all your favourite music videos while you eat!

PARTY MENU

Price £13.00 per person

Main course



G

Chicken legs
Fresh vegetables or salad
Burger
Rice or chips



H



J



K

DESSERT

Fruit salad and cream
Cheesecake



DRINKS

Fruit juice or lemonade
Mineral water




Our parties are very popular – book six months before your birthday.



ORDER OUR CHEF'S AMAZING BIRTHDAY CAKE.

2 Complete the phrases with one or two food words from the menus in Ex. 1. Then in pairs, say which foods you like / don't like. Say what you'd like to eat or drink right now!

a bowl of a bottle of a slice of
 a glass of a piece of a plate of

I like salad.

Me too.

I want to eat a bowl of fruit salad now.

3 Read the advertisements again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- The party room at Pizza Palace is smaller than the one at Easy Burgers.
- The food at Easy Burgers looks healthier.
- Pizza Palace is more expensive than Easy Burgers.
- Easy Burgers and Pizza Palace are both popular.

GRAMMAR as ... as

1 Read what Nicky thinks and complete the sentences with *the same* or *different*.

- We use **as ... as** to say that two things are
- We use **not as ... as** to say that two things are

2 Compare the pairs of things using *as ... as* or *not as ... as*.

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 0 oranges ... lemons | healthy / sweet |
| <i>Oranges are as healthy as lemons. / Lemons are not as sweet as oranges.</i> | |
| 1 trains ... buses | comfortable / slow |
| 2 maths ... English | easy / interesting |
| 3 cats ... dogs | friendly / noisy |
| 4 your country ... the UK | hot / big |

Pizza Palace is as popular as Easy Burgers.

The birthday cake at Pizza Palace isn't as good as the one at Easy Burgers.

Pizza Palace isn't as expensive as Easy Burgers.

Comparative adjectives

3 Read the rules. Write the comparative forms of the adjectives in the box.

Short adjectives			Long adjectives	
one syllable	one syllable ending in e	two syllables ending in y	one syllable ending in vowel consonant	
add -er	add -r	change y to -ier	double the last letter and add -er	use more + adjective
short – shorter	nice – nicer	healthy – healthier	big – bigger	expensive – more expensive

beautiful busy cold dirty exciting fat funny hard
hot large late long new popular tall thin

» **GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 145**

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- The tickets for adults cost £25, but the tickets for students are more cheaper.
- This bag is not big as my last one.
- It's cold here so bring some warmer clothes.
- I was more luckier than my friends.
- My drink was not expensive as yours.

5 Think of two different things for each category. Then in pairs, write sentences to compare the two things. Use adjectives from Ex. 3 and any other adjectives you know. Check each other's sentences.

foods / jobs / restaurants you go to / sports football, tennis / things you wear / ways of travelling

Football is more exciting than tennis. Tennis is harder to learn than football.

READING

- 1 Look at the title of the article and the photos. Where do you think the food in the photos comes from? Read the article quickly and compare your ideas with your partner's.



STREET FOOD AROUND THE WORLD

82

Order of adjectives

- 1 OPINION: tasty, wonderful, ¹
- 2 SIZE: large, ²
- 3 PHYSICAL QUALITY: ³, grilled
- 4 COLOUR: ⁴

1 In lots of countries around the world street food is very popular. In India, you can get different kinds of **curry** made with meat or with vegetables and lots of **chilli**. On the streets of Thailand, you can get fish soup, **omelettes**, rice or **noodles** and **grilled meat**. For dessert, you can have tasty fried bananas, fresh fruit **pancakes** or Thai **sweets**. Mexico is famous for its wonderful spicy tacos served with salsa made of small green onions, cucumber and tomatoes. In Germany and Denmark, you can have meat served with bread and **fried onions**, and in France they serve lovely large pancakes called crêpes. At the seaside in many countries, people eat **chips**, ice cream or **seafood**.

2 In many ways, street food is better than restaurant food. It's much cheaper, and you know it's fresh because you watch the chef prepare and cook it in front of you. It's also more fun to eat – you can use your hands and not worry about what the waiter thinks of you! People often buy and eat food outside at music festivals and at sports events like football matches. There are also street food festivals in many cities. People can try new food from around the world at these festivals.

2 Read the again and answer the questions.

- 1 Which countries are famous for street food? What kind of street food do they have?
- 2 What three things does the writer like about street food?
- 3 At what events do people eat street food?
- 4 What happens at street food festivals?

3 Do you agree with the writer that street food is better than restaurant food? Why / Why not?



TALKING POINTS

07 Watch the video. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

Would you like to try any of the street food in the photos? Why / Why not?

Which street foods do you have in your country?

What's your favourite street food?

VOCABULARY Food

1 Match the photos A–J to the **words** in paragraph 1 in the article.

EP



2 Read the phrases with the underlined adjectives in text 1. What food do these adjectives describe?

Add the missing underlined adjectives to the examples in the post-it note on page 66.

PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/ and /ɒ/

83 Listen to the words in the box and repeat them. Listen to the sound of the underlined letters. Then put the words in the correct columns.

coffee	cup	horrible	lovely	much	mushroom
omelette	one	onion	want	what	

/ʌ/	/ɒ/
cup	coffee

84 Listen and check. Then repeat.

LISTENING

85 Listen to a boy speaking to his friend Nadia. What does he want Nadia to do?

85 In pairs, practise saying these dates, prices, numbers and times. Write some more and test a partner. Then listen and complete the notes.

3rd July	28th June	£8.50	£2.50
74	89	2 o'clock	11.30 a.m.

STREET FOOD FESTIVAL

- Date: 28th and 29th
- Website: www.....com
- Ticket prices: Adults: £10. Under 16s: £.....
- Times: a.m. to midnight
- Address: Market Square on Avenue
- How to get there: Bus number or


SPEAKING

86 Listen to a girl talking to a food seller. What does she order?

86 Complete the conversation from Ex. 1. Then listen and check. In pairs, practise the conversation.

Girl: Excuse me, what are you selling?
 Seller: It's called paella. It's from ¹..... It's made with seafood, ²....., vegetables and ³.....
 Girl: Oh. What's it like?
 Seller: It's ⁴.....! Would you like some?
 Girl: Yes, please. How ⁵..... is it?
 Seller: It's £4.50 for a small plate or ⁶ £..... for a large plate.
 Girl: I'll have a small plate, please.
 Seller: That's £4.50, please.
 Girl: Here you ⁷.....
 Seller: Thanks. I hope you ⁸..... it!

3 In pairs, imagine you are at the street food festival. Student A, order the food in photos A–C. Student B, answer the questions. Then swap roles and ask and answer about the food in photos D–F. Student A see page 122. Student B see page 121.

 A Barbecue	 B Aloo Tikki
 C Shish kebab	 D Yakisoba
 E Zapiekanka	 F Perepichka

12 THE LATEST TECHNOLOGY

? ABOUT YOU

08 Watch the video, then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

What technology do you use?

How many hours a day do you spend online?

How often do you chat to your friends online?

VOCABULARY AND READING

Technology

1 Match the photos A-L to the words in the box.

EP e-reader fitness tracker games console
headphones keyboard laptop mouse
printer screen smartphone speaker
tablet

87 Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 In small groups, ask and answer these questions.

- How many things with screens are there in your home?
- What are they, and whose are they?
- How many printers/speakers/games consoles are there? Where are they in your house?
- Have you got a smartphone? If so, what kind?

3 Read the facts about technology. Say if you knew the information already, if the information surprises you, or if it worries you. Then compare your answers with a partner.

4 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- Which of the facts surprises you the most?
- Which of the facts worries you the most?



88

DID YOU KNOW...?

The most popular games console of all time is the PlayStation 2.

Having problems falling asleep? Looking at the screen on your smartphone, laptop or tablet before bed is one of the worst things you can do. The blue light keeps you awake.

Monaco has the fastest internet in the world. That means it's the best place to watch a movie on your smartphone!

The world's earliest mouse was made of wood and had two wheels. You moved it with your hand.

IMDb is probably the oldest website on the internet. It began in 1990 and now has information on about 7.7 million movies.

Your keyboard is one of the dirtiest things in your home. Clean it often and wash your hands before you start typing!

Today, almost all of us have a smartphone for calling people or sending texts, and even the smallest ones are more powerful than the computers used to send Apollo 11 to the moon.

The world's largest and widest screen can show pictures up to 12 metres high and 50 metres across!

1 Look at the examples of superlative adjectives. Read *Did you know ... ?* on page 68 again and find all the superlatives.

the fastest internet in the world **the most popular** games console

Short adjectives				Long adjectives
one syllable	one syllable ending in e	two syllables ending in y	one syllable ending in vowel consonant	use <i>the most</i>
add -est	add -st	change y to -iest	double the last letter and add -est	use the most + adjective
quiet - quiet est	nice - nice st	dirty - dirti est	big - big gest	expensive – the most expensive

» **GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 147**

2 Read the rules above and write comparatives and superlatives forms of the adjectives.

Regular: 1 big *bigger the biggest* 2 famous 3 early 4 thin 5 beautiful 6 young

Irregular: 7 good 8 bad

3 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives.

- 1 My dad has the _____ (good) computer in our house.
- 2 My laptop is the _____ (light) one you can buy.
- 3 The _____ (popular) website among my friends is YouTube.
- 4 This smartphone has the _____ (big) screen of all the ones in the shop. Do you like it?
- 5 The _____ (bad) thing about my computer is the mouse. It doesn't work properly.
- 6 My phone is the _____ (old) one in our family.

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 Football is the famous game in the world.
- 2 The better time to come to my house is 5.30.
- 3 The easier way to travel there is by bus.
- 4 My room is the bigger in the house.

PRONUNCIATION Stress in superlatives

5 Listen and repeat the words. Then put them into the correct column. Listen again and check.

the biggest the cleverest the friendliest the most exciting
 the most expensive the nicest the quickest the worst

o0	
o0o	<i>the biggest</i>
o0oo	
ooo0o	

6 Look at the table. Use the adjectives in the box to compare the phones.

	Price	Size	Weight	Easy to use	Camera	Battery
High Star	£299	115 x 58 x 9 mm	130 g	★★★★	★★	★★
Bluebird	£355	116 x 61 x 12 mm	142 g	★★★	★★★★	★
Cloud 7	£450	135 x 67 x 17 mm	155 g	★	★★★	★★★

big/small
 cheap/expensive
 heavy/light
 thick/thin

7 » Work with a partner. Go to page 120.

The history OF COMPUTERS

90



205BCE

The Antikythera Mechanism

In 1900, a group of people diving near the Greek island of Antikythera found this machine on the sea floor. For many years, no one understood what it was or how it worked. Scientists now say it was used to find out the positions of the sun, moon and stars. Many people call it the world's earliest 'computer'.



1940s

Alan Turing

Alan Turing wasn't well known when he was alive, but he's now one of the most famous scientists of the 20th century. His ideas on computer science changed the world. He worked on the first digital computer – it was called Colossus, weighed 30 tonnes, and was as big as a large living room.

READING

1 Do you know the names of any early computers? Read the article. Then complete the sentences with one or two words from it.

- 1 Some children use an abacus to learn how to do
- 2 Charles Babbage's computer had several different
- 3 Colossus was as big as a
- 4 Modern are small but can do more than the biggest computers of the past.



TALKING POINTS

Computers can now do a lot of clever things. But are they more intelligent than us? Why / Why not?



around 2,700 BCE to today

The abacus

People still use abacuses today in many parts of the world, especially to teach maths to children. Of course, they are very different from modern computers, but the idea is the same – to answer difficult maths questions much more quickly than a human can.

1791–1871
and 1815–1852



Charles Babbage and Ada Lovelace

The modern computer was Charles Babbage's idea. The machine he wanted to build, called a 'difference engine', was special because it had all the parts that a modern computer has. It could save information and was also a kind of printer. Ada Lovelace was the first computer programmer. She had the idea for 'software' – a way of telling a computer to do different things.

From the 1950s

Modern computers

From the 1950s, computers got smaller, faster and cheaper. Today, the smallest mobile phones have more memory than the biggest early computers. And computers are getting better all the time. However, they are not perfect. One of the worst problems is computer viruses. You can lose a lot of information when one gets on your machine. Be careful about what you download from the internet.



1 Look at the article. Find the words in the box. Match them to the definitions.

EP digital download machine memory save software virus

- 1 This helps humans to do work.
- 2 This is a part of a computer. It holds information.
- 3 This is a dangerous computer program.
- 4 You do this to make sure the computer keeps your work.
- 5 This describes cameras, computers and clocks that record information as 0s or 1s.
- 6 This means to copy information from the internet onto your computer.
- 7 This is a set of all the programs that make a computer do different things.

2 Match the verbs to the nouns. Then make sentences.

EP **Verbs:** buy, chat, download, go, play, surf, visit, watch


Nouns: with friends, clothes, games, the internet, music, online, videos, websites
I often chat online with my cousins.

3 Read the survey. Choose three or four questions and write two more of your own. Walk around the class asking your questions. Write sentences about what you found out.

COMPUTER SURVEY

- What sort of things do you download from the internet?
- Do you know how to stop a virus from getting onto your computer?
- How much memory has your phone got?
- Do you ever forget to save your work?
- How often do you chat with friends online?

LISTENING

91  1 Listen to the conversation and choose the correct answer. Now look at Question 1. Which is the correct answer? Why are the other two answers wrong? In pairs, compare your answers. Then listen again and check.

- 1 When did Andy get his new computer?
A yesterday B last week C a month ago
- 2 Andy's dad bought the computer from
A a website. B a shop. C a friend.
- 3 How much did it cost?
A £150 B £250 C £2,000
- 4 What does Andy want to buy for the computer?
A a camera B a mouse C a printer
- 5 What does Andy like most about the computer?
A the keyboard B the screen
C the speakers

WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE An email

GET READY Read the email. What happened?

PLAN Think of Morgan's questions.

WRITE Write an email to Morgan with answers to all his questions. Write *Hi, Morgan, or Dear Morgan, See you soon, Best wishes,* and your name. Write 25 words or more.

My laptop broke yesterday, and I need to get a new one. Tell me about your new computer. When did you get it? How much did it cost? What's the best thing about it?
Best wishes,
Morgan

IMPROVE In pairs, read your emails. Give your partner two ideas to make their email better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your email.

WRITING A BLOG

1 Look at the sentences and answer the questions.

Great minds think alike.

There's a blog for everyone.

We can learn a lot sharing our ideas, opinions and views.

- 1 What do you think the sentences mean?
- 2 Do you agree with the sentences? Why? / Why not?
- 3 Do you have a blog? Do you know any bloggers?

2 Look at the topics for blogs. Choose two topics you think are interesting. Share your ideas with a partner.

activities animals fashion food life
experiences music special days and
holidays sports travel

3 Read the text quickly. Complete the article with the headings in the box. Is it easy to start a blog? Then answer the questions.

- A Stay safe!
B Think about your readers
C Have one day for writing

- 1 What do you need to choose first?
- 2 Who do you need to think about?
- 3 What do platforms give you?
- 4 Do you need to write posts every day?
- 5 What are some things we should not post online?

4 Complete the sentences with the highlighted words from the text.

- 1 I ___ o ___ o ___ a blog about sports.
- 2 Choose an i ___ e ___ e ___ i ___ topic.
- 3 To start a blog, you need to choose a p ___ a ___ o ___.
- 4 It is a good idea to write a ___ o ___ now.
- 5 You need to be careful online. It is not safe to post p ___ s ___ a ___ e ___ i ___ like your address or phone number.
- 6 You need to decide on your topic and ___ e ___ i ___, and think about your readers.

93 5 Listen to Katie and David talking about blogs. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 They are at
a Katie's house. b David's house. c school.
- 2 Katie's blog is about
a dogs. b cats. c music.

93 6 Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 Katie's mum is at home.
- 2 Katie is in the living room.
- 3 Katie is studying for an exam.
- 4 Katie thinks starting a blog is difficult.

7 Match the two halves of the sentences.



LIFE SKILLS

Writing a blog

A blog can help you:

- improve your computer skills
- organise your ideas
- share opinions and views with other people.



TALKING POINTS

Do you think it's a good idea to start a blog? Why? / Why not? Do you prefer reading a blog or reading a book?



USEFUL LANGUAGE

- 1 You're good at ... a about music?
- 2 It isn't safe to ... b to follow your blog?
- 3 Is your blog ... c before you put photos of them online.
- 4 Ask people ... d put personal information online.
- 5 Do you want a lot of people ... e using computers.

DO YOU WANT TO START A BLOG?

92

Do you read or **follow** any blogs? What topics do you like to read about?

How about you? Have you got a blog? Why not? Now is a good time to start if your parents agree!

Follow these quick and easy steps to start your own blog.

1 Choose a topic for your blog

The first thing you need to do is choose a topic. What do you want to blog about? Your favourite sport, music or video games? Choose a topic you feel happy to talk about and find **interesting**. You've got a topic? Now choose a title and a **design** for your blog.

2

Who's going to read your blog? Is your blog for your friends and family? Is it on a special topic you and your friends like? What is interesting about it?

3 Decide on a platform

There are different free platforms to start your blog. Most platforms give easy instructions on how to start. Some popular platforms are Blogger, Medium and WordPress. Take a look and decide!



Don't forget, **always** check with your parents before starting a blog. Parents can help young people under the age of 13 to set up a blog.

4 Write a blog post

It can sometimes be difficult to write your first blog **post**. It's a good plan to share your ideas with close friends and family before you put your post online. Don't worry if you don't like what you put online – you can always change it later. Remember, make sure people let you use their photos or information.

5

At the beginning, you can choose a day of the week to write your blog posts. It's important to write a post every week.

6

Blogs can be fun, but never put your **personal details** online. Never write your address or telephone number. Remember, you need to stay safe online.

PROJECT

Writing a blog

In small groups, write and design a blog post:

- Choose a blog topic and think about the design for the blog.
- Write two short blog posts about the topic.
- Decide what to include with each of the posts (a photo and a link / a video?)
- Look at the design of some other blogs on a platform.
- Design how you think the posts would look on a platform.
- Share your ideas for posts and design with another group.

VOCABULARY

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

bright discount download keyboard pocket tablet wallet wool

- This computer was £500 last week. Now it's £425. That's a big _____.
- My jumper's made of _____. It's really warm!
- My dad gave me a _____ for my birthday. And he put £20 in it!
- I want to buy a new coat. I like that one, but it's only got one _____.
- The hats are all too _____. I prefer pale colours.
- The _____ on that new computer is very small. It's difficult to see the letters.
- Most people _____ music from the internet these days. They don't buy CDs or records.
- At my new school, all the students have a _____ or a laptop. They don't have books.

2 Put the words in the correct column.

boots cap cola cream e-reader gloves grapes
laptop lemonade mineral water memory mouse
mushroom noodles omelette scarf screen socks
software speaker suit swimming costume tie virus

Food and drink

Clothes

Technology

3 Use the pictures to write sentences with *for*.

I played tennis with my friend for two hours yesterday.



GRAMMAR

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- I bought a T-shirt because *my / mine* is old.
- I love my room because it's *bigger / biggest* than my old room.
- You can find different bands and the *better / best* music at the festival.

2 Complete the sentences with *a bit of* or *a few*.

- We saw _____ people on the train today.
- There are _____ advertisements on the wall.
- That cake looks nice. Can I have _____ it?
- _____ companies have only online shopping.

Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- You can wear yours sports clothes.
- I bought a new jeans and a shirt.
- I bought them because they were more cheap – they cost only £5 each!
- That pizza smells good. I want to try _____ it. Don't you?
- I've got _____ time. I can help you with your project.

3 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.


- 0 Oranges are sweeter than lemons. (sweet)
1 You are always me! (busy)
2 All the students' work is good today, but yours is (good)
3 Football is sport in the UK. (popular)
4 I liked your story. It was mine. (funny)
5 Our cat is it was two years ago. (thin)
6 That café has hot chocolate in town. (bad)
7 The chairs in this classroom are (comfortable) in the school.
8 The new smartphones are the old ones. (clever)

READING

- 1 Read the text and answer the question. How old are Tom, Beth and Mia?

LISTENING

Tom has got three sisters – Beth, Mia and Alice. Beth is three years younger than Tom and seven years younger than Mia. Alice is the youngest. She's six years old. She's one year younger than Beth.

- 94  1 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 Listen to two friends talking together in a shop. Why does Ruby want to buy the sunglasses?
A She's happy with the price.
B She likes the bright colour.
C They're the right size.
- 2 Listen to a man and a girl talking about what they want to eat. Where are they?
A in a café B at a food festival
C in a supermarket
- 3 Listen to a boy talking to a girl about his laptop. What does the girl offer to do?
A lend him a laptop
B take his laptop to the repair shop
C return a laptop she borrowed
- 4 Listen to a message in a shopping centre. What change do customers need to know about?
A New discounts are available.
B There is a later closing time.
C New stores are opening soon.
- 5 Listen to a girl talking about a party. What did she like about it?
A the food B the music C the party room

SPEAKING

- 1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 favourite / what / are / clothes / your / ?
2 where / like / you / do / shopping / go / to / ?
3 food / do / eat / you / what / to / like / ?
4 use / a / often / you / do / how / phone / ?

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Take turns to speak.

- 2 In pairs, talk about some of your favourite things. Take turns to speak.

A: *Tell me about some of your favourite things.*

B: *I've got a favourite pair of jeans. I like them very much because ...*

13 HEALTHY BODIES

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Illness

1 Match the sentences to the photos.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| EP 1 I've got a cold . | 5 I feel sick . | 9 I've got a pain in my foot. |
| 2 I hurt my leg. | 6 I've got a stomach ache . | 10 I've got a headache . |
| 3 I've got a broken arm . | 7 I've got a temperature . | |
| 4 My eye hurts . | 8 I've got a toothache . | |

95 Listen and check. Then repeat.

96 Listen to three conversations. Match the health problems to the people in the pictures.



96 Listen again. Match the advice to the health problems in Exercise 2. Write 1, 2 or 3.

- don't do any sports
- eat fruit and vegetables
- don't watch TV late
- go to hospital
- don't walk
- rest
- go to sleep now
- drink a lot

4 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- Do you do anything that is bad for your health?
- How do you want to change it?

*I play computer games for three hours a day.
I'd like to play more sport.*

ABOUT YOU

09 Watch the video. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

What was your last health problem? When did it happen? What did you do?


GRAMMAR

should / shouldn't

- 1 Look at these examples from the conversations. Then choose the correct words to complete the rules.

You **shouldn't walk** on that leg.
You **should go** to bed.

- 1 We use **should** and **shouldn't** to give advice / information.
- 2 We use **should** to say something is a good / bad idea.
- 3 We use **shouldn't** to say something is a good / bad idea.
- 4 The verb after **should** is always / never the infinitive without 'to'.

- 97  2 Look at these examples from the conversations you heard on page 76. Match the questions to the answers. Notice how we make questions with *should*. Listen and check. Then repeat.

I should ... → Should I ... ?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Should I stop doing sport? | a No, you shouldn't . |
| 2 Should I take some medicine? | b Every evening before bed. |
| 3 When should I drink it? | c Yes, you should . |

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 148

- 3 Read the problems 1–7 and choose the correct advice for each one a–g. Then complete the advice with *should* / *shouldn't*. There may be more than one possible answer.


- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 My hand hurts a bit today. | a You go to bed earlier. |
| 2 I've got a pain in my foot. | b You call the doctor and drink lots of water. |
| 3 I've got a headache and a temperature. | c You play tennis. |
| 4 I feel a bit sick. | d You go to school. |
| 5 I can't move my leg at all. I think it's broken. | e You wear more comfortable shoes. |
| 6 I feel very tired. | f You go to hospital. |
| 7 I've got a bad cold. | g You eat anything. |

- 4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
|  1 I think you should to bring a scarf. | 4 You aren't well. You stay at home today. |
| 2 You shoud go to the doctor. | 5 You don't come to my house today – I am ill. |
| 3 I should to go to bed earlier. | 6 You no should watch TV all day. |



PRONUNCIATION | Silent consonants

- 98  5 Some words in English have silent consonants. Find one silent consonant in each word. Listen and check. Then repeat.

castle climb half knife listen should talk walk would wrong wrote

- 6 Read the example conversation. Have similar conversations with your partner. Choose a different question from the box each time. Use health problems and advice from this lesson, or use your own ideas.

What's wrong? What's the matter? Are you OK?

What's the matter?

I've got a temperature. What should I do?

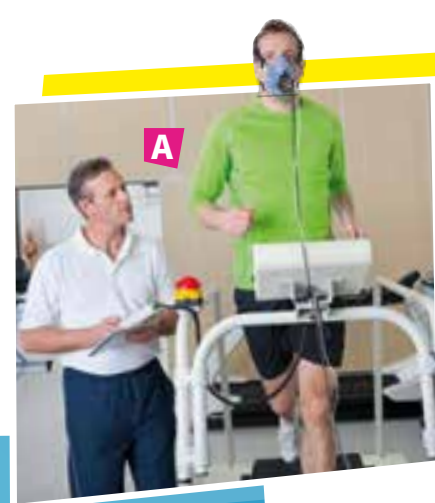
You should rest. You should also drink lots of water. You shouldn't go to school.

READING

1 Read the magazine article. Match the photos A–D to the paragraphs 1–3.

2 Choose the correct headings a–d for the paragraphs 1–3. There is one heading you don't need.

- a Different kinds of running races c All the ways running is good for you
b Some problems with running d Reasons why running is popular



What is so great about

99

running?

1 In the past, people didn't need sports like running to stay healthy because they were very active. But these days, many of us spend most of the day sitting down. This means we need to get some exercise in our free time, and running is a cheap and easy way to do it. It's more fun than doing boring exercises in a gym, and all you need is a good pair of trainers and some comfortable clothes. Also, it's a sport that people can do at any age – for example, Fauja Singh finished a marathon at the age of 101!

2 To make running interesting, you can enter a race. Fun runs are very popular. These are often 5 km long and are great for beginners. You can run with your friends and maybe dress up. For fitter people, there are half-marathons, marathons, or even ultra-marathons. These can be 70–400 km long. One of the most famous is the Marathon des Sables which takes six days and goes through the Sahara desert.

3 Running is fun and scientists say it is one of the best ways to keep fit. However, make sure you don't do it every day – it's important to have a rest between runs. Running improves the health of almost every part of your body, including your brain. It can make you feel happier and healthier, and live longer. It also helps you sleep well, and that gives you the energy to enjoy your life more. Perhaps it's the perfect sport!



C



TALKING POINTS

Do you go running? If not, would you like to?
Do you think running is the 'perfect sport'?
If not, what is?

VOCABULARY

Health

1 For each phrase in the box, two verbs are right and one is wrong.

EP Cross out the wrong verb for each phrase.

get / keep / do	fit	make / feel / stay	healthy
enter / do / stay	a race	do / keep / try	some exercises in a gym
go / eat / sleep	well	get / do / keep	some exercise


2 Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in Ex. 1.

- 1 After I broke my leg, I _____ some exercises to make it strong again.
- 2 I think it's really important to _____ fit, so I _____ a lot of exercise.
- 3 In my family, we _____ well. We have lots of vegetables and no fast food.
- 4 My dad _____ a 5 km race last week and finished in 35 minutes.
- 5 When I do a lot of exercises and spend time outdoors I _____ fit and healthy.


3 Write sentences about you and your family using the vocabulary in Ex. 1.

In pairs, compare your sentences.

LISTENING

100  1 Read the sentences below and listen to the conversations between a boy called Jed and a girl called Holly. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 Jed wants to do a 5 km race.
- 2 Holly can do the race with Jed.
- 3 Jed wants to do the race with Holly.
- 4 Jed is happy to get up early.
- 5 Jed can go cycling as well as running.
- 6 Jed is pleased to see Holly after the race.

100  2 What advice did Holly give Jed? Complete Holly's notes with the phrases in the box. Listen again and check.

buy special running clothes	get an app
watch TV and play computer games	have chocolate or cake
eat well and drink lots of water	get good trainers
go swimming or cycling	go running every day
go to bed early every night	do leg exercises

Holly's notes

Advice for Jed

He should	He shouldn't
.....
.....

3 Compare Holly's advice with the advice in the article. What do you think of Holly's advice to Jed? Which advice is good and which is bad?

SPEAKING

1 Look at the questions on an internet chat page. In pairs, think of three pieces of advice for each person.



My family and I are going on a cycling holiday soon, but I'm not very fit. Can you give me some advice?



I want to improve my English. It's really bad and I feel worried! What should I do?

This person should/shouldn't ... Another idea is to ... It's important to ...

2 Compare your ideas with another pair's ideas. Who gave the best advice?

14 GETTING AROUND TOWN

VOCABULARY AND READING

Places in town

1 Look at the map and find these things.

EP bridges bus stops a playground
a roundabout streets traffic lights

2 Look at the map. Find a **place** where you can:

- EP
- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0 see a film <i>cinema</i> | 8 buy petrol |
| 1 send a letter | 9 find a police officer |
| 2 stay the night | 10 get better |
| 3 buy food | 11 see a play |
| 4 borrow a book | 12 catch a bus |
| 5 study | 13 learn about history |
| 6 eat a meal | 14 buy things outdoors |
| 7 get some money | |

3 In pairs, which of the places in Ex. 2 do you ...

- like going to?
- often go to?
- hate going to?
- never go to?

4 Read the description of the town and look at the map in Ex. 1. Find five mistakes in the description.

ABOUT YOU

Do you live in a city, town or village? What is it like?

Do you prefer cities, towns or villages?

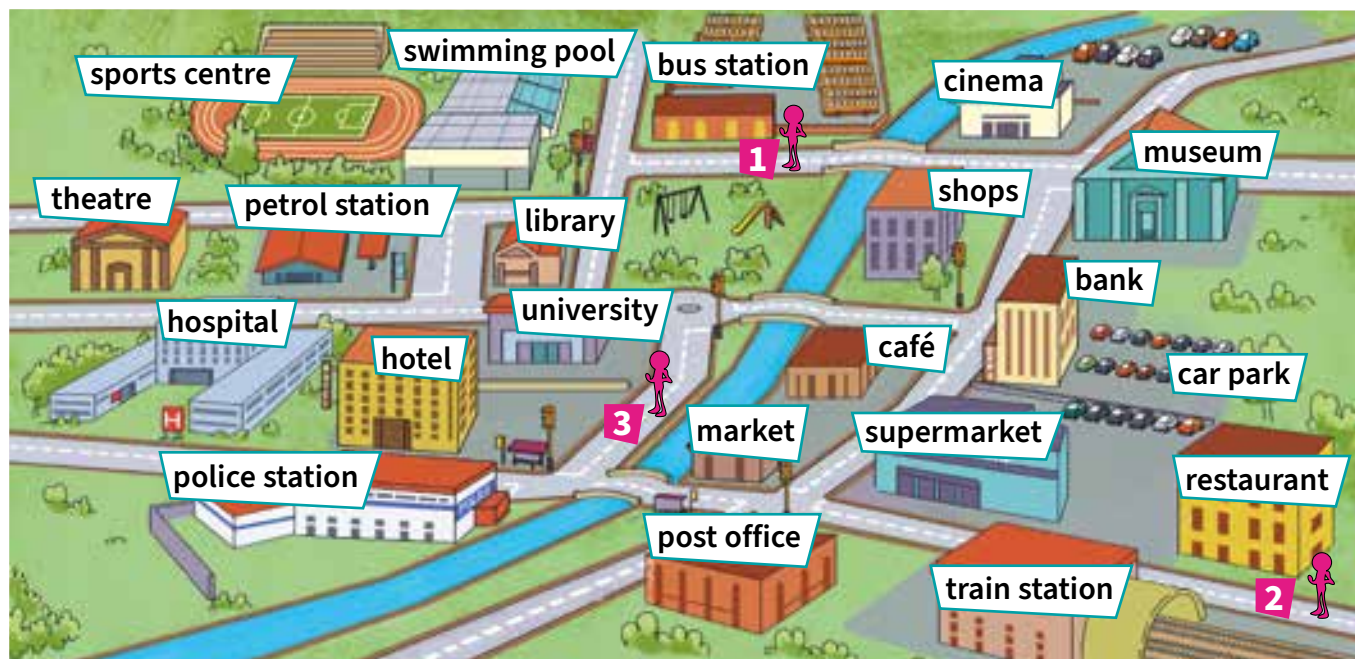
What's the best thing about where you live?

ABOUT | GALLERY | CONTACT

This is my town. It's small but very pretty. A river goes **through** the town centre and there are four bridges going **across** it. Between the road and the river, there's a market. **Next to** the market there is a really nice café. There are also some shops in the town. **Opposite** the shops, there's a bank, a museum and a restaurant. Behind the museum, there's a children's playground. The restaurant is **near** the train station, and **beside** the train station there's a post office. There's also a sports centre on that street. **In front of** the supermarket, there's a car park. We have a zoo too, but that's **outside** the town.

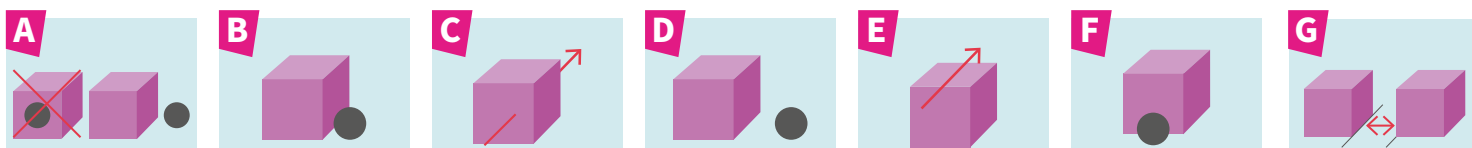
101

5 20 9



1 Read the description in Exercise 4 on page 80 again and match the **prepositions** to the diagrams.

across beside/next to in front of near opposite outside through



2 Look at the map on page 80. Complete each sentence with a **preposition**.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 The river goes _____ the town. | 4 There's a bus stop _____ the hospital. |
| 2 Hotel guests need to go _____ the river to go to the museum. | 5 There's a car park _____ the supermarket. |
| 3 The zoo is _____ the town. | 6 The bank is _____ the museum. |
| | 7 There are some shops _____ the museum. |

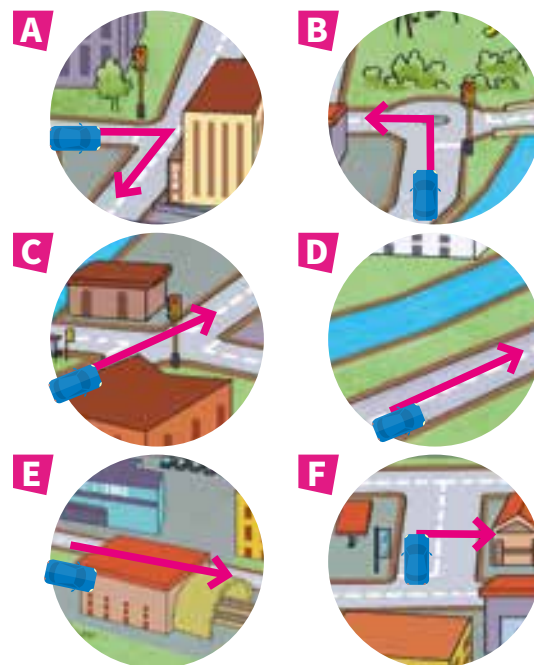
» **GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 149**

102 **3** Find the people on the map on page 80. Each person wants to go somewhere. Listen to the conversations. Where do the people want to go?

Person 1 _____ Person 2 _____ Person 3 _____

103 **4** Match the sentences to the pictures. Listen and check. Then repeat.

- Go past the train station.
- Turn right at the traffic lights.
- Go straight on. Don't turn left or right at the traffic lights.
- The bank is on your right.
- Drive along the road beside the river.
- Turn left at the roundabout.



5 Choose the correct preposition to complete the sentences.


- To get to my house, go *through* / *along* Beat Street, turn right and it's on your left.
- My house is *between* / *next to* the Columbus Hotel.
- To get to the station, walk *across* / *near* the bridge at the end of the High Street.
- My house is *in front of* / *opposite* the post office. I can cross the road and send letters and parcels there.

6 Work with a partner. Student A, say which person you are on the map (1, 2 or 3). Then ask Student B for directions to somewhere on the map. Student B, give directions. Then change roles.

7 Write some directions to places from your school. Give them to your teacher to read out. Then in pairs, listen to new directions from your partner. Say where they take you to.

Go out of the school and turn left. Take the first road on the right. Walk past Café Brava. Where are you?

READING

- 104  **1** Look at the map and read the article about Edinburgh. Match places A–E to the names in the box. Listen and check. Then repeat.

Edinburgh Castle Palace of Holyroodhouse
Scottish Parliament St Giles' Cathedral
Tourist Information Office

- 2** Read the article again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Edinburgh is the largest city in Scotland.
- 2 Lots of people visit the castle in the summer.
- 3 You can walk from Edinburgh Castle to Holyroodhouse.
- 4 The Camera Obscura museum is about the history of Edinburgh.
- 5 The Queen sometimes stays at Holyroodhouse.
- 6 The Scottish Parliament building is closed to visitors.
- 7 Princes Street is a good place to go shopping.
- 8 All of Edinburgh's guided tours are on foot.



Hey guys! I'm going to **Edinburgh**, the capital of Scotland, soon. Have you got any advice for me?

 105

Lucky you! Edinburgh's great. It isn't the biggest city in Scotland, but it's very beautiful and has an amazing history. The best place to start is Edinburgh Castle. This sits up on top of Castle Rock and from here you can see the whole city below you. It gets very busy in the summer.

Next, walk down the Royal Mile, through Edinburgh's 12th-century Old Town. Don't miss St Giles' Cathedral and the Camera Obscura. This amazing museum is all about how we see things, and has floating fish, funny mirrors and a 3D tunnel of stars. They sell great postcards there.

At the bottom of the Royal Mile is the Queen's Edinburgh home, the Palace of Holyroodhouse. When the Queen isn't there, you can visit the rooms and gardens. Next to the Palace is the Scottish Parliament. Spanish architect Enric Miralles designed it. Parts of it look like fishing boats on the beach. There are also roof gardens and fountains. And you can visit it for free!

You should also go to Edinburgh's New Town. This area isn't very new actually – it's over 200 years old! The most famous street in Edinburgh, called Princes Street, is in New Town. Here you find Edinburgh's best shops and department stores.

If you haven't got much time, you can see Edinburgh with a tour guide. Choose from walking tours, cycle tours and even ghost tours. These take you through the narrow streets of the Old Town late at night, and include scary stories from the 18th century.

Don't forget to take a good guidebook – and your raincoat. It often rains in Edinburgh. Have a great time!




TALKING POINTS

Would you like to go to Edinburgh?
Why / Why not? What would you like to do there? Do you enjoy visiting cities? What kind of museums do you like best?

VOCABULARY Compound nouns

In English, it's possible to make new words by putting two words together: *bus + stop = bus stop*. These are called compound nouns. Sometimes they are written as one word and sometimes as two. Do you do this in your language too?

1 Look at the map, text and Exercises on page 80, find 12 compound nouns.

106  2 Match the words on the left of the box to the words on the right to make compound nouns. Remember some are one word and some are two. Listen and check. Then repeat.


post cycle walking guide tour rain

book card coat guide tour tour



3 Complete the sentences with compound nouns from Ex. 2.

- I found a _____ with a really nice picture on it to send to my friend.
- I'm glad I wore a _____ yesterday because the weather was terrible.
- That _____ was fun, but my feet hurt now!
- Our _____ was so funny. I loved her stories about the city.
- I read in the _____ that this castle is old.
- The _____ was brilliant. We rode all around the city.

PRONUNCIATION Compound nouns

107  4 Listen to the compound nouns and underline the stressed words. In compound nouns, which word do we usually stress? Listen and repeat.

LISTENING

- 108  1 Listen to Rob talking to a friend about a visit to Edinburgh. Which place did Rob visit?
0 Friday evening B
- 108  2 In pairs, compare your answers. Listen and check.

Times

- Saturday morning
- Saturday afternoon
- Saturday evening
- Sunday morning
- Sunday afternoon

Places

- Scottish Parliament
- Old Town
- Theatre
- New Town
- Museum
- Edinburgh Castle
- Cathedral
- Holyroodhouse

WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE An article

GET READY Look at the article again and find all the examples of *this* and *these*.

Complete the paragraph with *this* or *these*.

London has lots of interesting buildings you can visit. One of ¹ _____ is Buckingham Palace, the Queen's London home. From here you can walk to St James's Park. ² _____ is a lovely place to stop for a rest. Many people like to see shows when they are in London. You can get tickets for ³ _____ online. And don't forget about Harrods! ⁴ _____ shop is famous around the world.

PLAN Make a list of interesting and famous places in a city you know well. Choose three, and make notes about them. You could include information such as: where they are; what you can do there; why they are interesting.

WRITE Write 50–60 words about your city. Use *this/these* in your paragraph.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own text and your partner's. Did you write about the same places? Check for mistakes with *this/these*. Give your partner two ideas to make their text better.

CULTURE

UKRAINE

NATURAL ATTRACTIONS

1 Discuss the questions with your partner.

1 Tick the geographical features you have in your area.


cave	forest	hill	lake	mountain
river	sea	waterfall		

2 What are the names of these places?

3 Are they popular with tourists? Why / Why not?



2 What are the names of these places? Where are they located?

109  3 Read texts 1–4 and check your answers to the questions in Ex. 2. Match the texts with photos A–D. Listen and check.

1 Shypit is located in the Carpathian Mountains. It's one of the most beautiful waterfalls in Ukraine. Lots of tourists come to see it every year. It's about 14 metres high and its waters make a noise which the locals call a **whisper**.

Every July people come there to celebrate a summer festival that finishes on Kupala night.

2 The Blue Lakes are located in Chernihiv region, in the pine forest. The water in the lakes looks blue because of the colour of the sand at the **bottom**. The Blue Lakes are popular not only with Ukrainian tourists but also with tourists from other countries. People come there to celebrate different festivals and enjoy the local nature. Doctors say that swimming in the lakes is very good for health.

3 This is the largest sandy area in Ukraine located in the south of the country, near the Black Sea. There is so much sand there that it looks like a real desert! The sand **dunes** in Oleshky Sands can be about 5 metres high. In summer, the temperatures of the sand in this area are very high! This place is a popular tourist attraction where people come to take great photos.

4 Optymistychna Cave is located in Ternopil region, in the west of Ukraine. It is the third longest cave in the world. There are even a few underground lakes in the cave! But the cave's biggest **wonder** is the beautiful mineral crystals of different shapes and colours. Some of them look like stars, others look like flowers, and tourists call masses of such crystals "cave snow". It's quite cold inside the cave all year round.

FACTFILE

UKRAINE

There are lots of different natural attractions in Ukraine: beautiful rivers, lakes, forests, mountains and seas. Here are some interesting facts about nature in Ukraine:

There are around 23 000 rivers, 20 000 lakes and 2 seas in Ukraine. Dnipro is the longest river in Ukraine. Yalpuh is the largest lake in Ukraine. Svitiiaz is the deepest lake in Ukraine. Hoverla is the highest mountain in Ukraine.



4 Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- 1 Which place is an international attraction?
- 2 Which place is famous for a special sound?
- 3 Which place is never warm?
- 4 Which place can be very hot in summer?

5 Match the **highlighted** words in the texts to the meanings.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 a hill of sand near a beach or in a desert | 3 the lowest part of a lake, river or sea |
| 2 something that makes you feel surprised | 4 to speak or say something very quietly |

6 Which of these natural attractions would you like to visit? Why? What would you do there?

110 **7** Listen to three children and match them with the photos.



110 **8** Listen again and tick the things that the children talk about.

Who talked about ...

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| • future plans | • social media sites |
| • extreme sports | • food |
| • games | • family |

9 Which of the natural attractions A-C from Ex. 7 have you visited? Did you like it there? Why / Why not? Which of them would you like to visit? Why?



INTERESTING FACT!

The village Dilove in Zakarpatskyi region is the geographical center of Europe. It is located on the bank of the river Tysa near the border with Romania.

TALKING POINTS

What are other interesting natural attractions to visit in Ukraine? Where are they located? Why are they popular with tourists? What can people do or see there?

PROJECT

A brochure

Imagine you work for a tour company. In pairs, design a brochure about some natural attractions for visitors to your area.

Make notes about:

- the name of the place and its location
- what people can see and do there
- typical food visitors can try
- important events in this area

Find or take some photographs of your local area, make a brochure.

Present your brochure to another pair.

15 MYSTERIES IN NATURE

? ABOUT YOU

What are your favourite places or things in nature?
 What activities do you like doing outside?
 Where do you like doing them?



VOCABULARY AND READING

Geographical features

1 Match photos A–H to the words in the box.

EP Use each word once only.

cliff field island lake
 mountain river snow water

111 Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 Look at the photos and complete the sentences with *wide*, *high*, *long* and *deep*.

- Mount Everest is 8,848 metres
- The Amazon River is 11 kilometres and 6,400 kilometres
- Lake Titicaca is 107 metres

3 Match the words in Exercise 1 to the adjectives in the box.

deep high long wide

4 Think about Ukraine. Give the names of ...

- two high mountains
- a long river
- an area of deep water
- a wide lake.

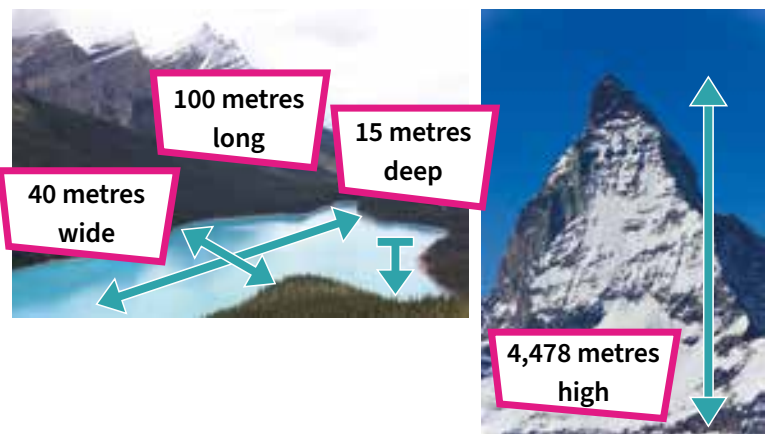
5 What can you see in the photos on page 87? What do you think this strange story is about?

6 Read the article quickly. Check your answers to Ex. 5.

7 Read the article again. Complete the text with *wide*, *high*, *long* and *deep*.

8 In pairs, discuss these questions.

- 1 Do you think the Yeti is real, or is it just a story?
- 2 What do you think the footprint in the snow belongs to?



Is the story real?

112



In 1951, a British explorer, Eric Shipton, was climbing in the Himalayas, south of Mount Everest. He wasn't exploring alone. There were several climbers and Sherpas with him. They weren't climbing that day,

but they were walking through thick snow on a mountain 6,000 metres ¹ when they saw a line of footprints. They followed the footprints for 500 metres. The footprints were 33 cm ², 20 cm ³ and a few centimetres ⁴, It wasn't a bear. The footprints were much too big. The Sherpas said the animal usually lived in the forests and didn't often come up into the snow. Their name for the animal was the Yeti, or the Wild Man of the Snows. People still come back from the Himalayas today with stories of seeing the Yeti.

GRAMMAR Past continuous

1 Read the table. Complete sentences 1–4 using the verbs in the article.

Positive	Eric Shipton was ¹ in the mountains.	Questions	Was I/he/she/it looking for footprints?
	The climbers were ² through thick snow.		Were you/we/they
Negative	Eric Shipton wasn't ³ alone.	Short answers	Yes,/No, I/he/she/it was./wasn't.
	The climbers weren't ⁴ that day.		Yes,/No, you/we/they were./weren't.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 150

2 What was happening yesterday afternoon? Complete the sentences with the past continuous form of the verbs. Then listen again and check.

- The boys (play) football in the park. They (not run) very fast because the grass was too long.
- you (climb) that tree?' 'No, I
- My friend (watch) TV. She (not tidy) her room.
- '..... the students (work) on the computer?' 'Yes,

Now correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- We are playing football in the park yesterday morning.
- I lost it at the party when we are dancing.
- We aren't reading stories about strange animals in class yesterday.
- She isn't thinking and she dropped her bag.

PRONUNCIATION Rising and falling intonation

113 3 Listen and repeat.

My brother was riding his bike. My dad wasn't working in the garden. Were they climbing in the mountains? Were you looking for footprints?

4 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

What were you doing ...

yesterday at seven o'clock? ... last Saturday at one o'clock? ... last Monday evening at six o'clock?

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. What do you know about Loch Ness and the Loch Ness Monster?
- 2 Read the article quickly and match the pictures A–C to the paragraphs 1–3.
- 3 Read the article again and answer the questions.
 - 1 When do people think they see things on the loch?
 - 2 What does 'loch' mean?
 - 3 How big is Loch Ness?
 - 4 Which has more water: the lakes of Wales and England or Loch Ness?
 - 5 When did people first see a monster?



LOCH NESS

114

1 Loch is the Scottish Gaelic word for 'lake'. Loch Ness is in the north of Scotland not far from Inverness. The loch is 230 m deep – it's the second deepest loch in Scotland – 36 km long and nearly 3 km wide. There's more water in Loch Ness than all the water in all the lakes in England and Wales. That's a lot of water for something to hide in!

2 The weather around the loch changes quickly. One minute it's sunny, the next it's cloudy, the next there's a bit of rain, and then it's sunny again. It can be a windy place, too. Clouds move quickly through the sky and on sunny days the clouds make shadows on the water. It's easy to think you see something in the water. When it's foggy, the fog sits on the loch and it's possible to think you see things then too.



TALKING POINTS

Do you think there is a monster living in Loch Ness? If not, why do so many people think they see something?

C



3

The story of the Loch Ness Monster, or 'Nessie', started about 1,500 years ago. Then people called it a giant water animal. In the 1930s, a new road beside the loch brought more people to the area and more people started to see more strange things. In fact, over 1,000 people think they saw a strange animal in the loch. There are several photos of some of the strange animals. Could any of them be Nessie?

VOCABULARY

The weather

1 Complete the table with the adjectives.

EP	Nouns	cloud	fog	ice	rain	snow	sun	wind
	Adjectives	cloudy						

2 Now match the adjectives to the symbols.



3 Complete the facts using the words in Ex. 1.

- 1 Wellington in New Zealand is a very _____ city. The _____ blows at more than 50 km an hour for more than half the year.
- 2 New York can be very _____ in winter. In some years, the _____ is more than 50 cm deep.
- 3 Valletta, the capital of Malta, has more _____ days than other cities in Europe. On most days there are no clouds in the sky.
- 4 Mawsynram in India is the wettest place in the world. There is _____ most days of the year and people always carry an umbrella.

4 How would you describe your town or city? Use the word from Ex. 1.

In summer, Odessa is a very sunny city. It is hot there from May to September.

LISTENING

115 1 Peter was on holiday with a friend in Scotland last summer. They were looking for the Loch Ness monster. Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 What was the weather like?
- 2 What day of the week was it?
- 3 What did Peter do after he woke up?
- 4 What could Peter see on the other side of the loch?
- 5 What did Peter think he could see in the water?
- 6 Why did Peter wait before he took the photo?
- 7 What did his friend see in the water?

Where does the animal live?
In which country?
In the forest / water / mountains?
What does it look like?
Is it big / small?
Does it fly?
Is it friendly / shy?
What is it called?
Are there any pictures or photos of it?
Is it real or just a story?

SPEAKING

1 What other stories about strange animals do you know? Do you know the names of any mythological animals?
Use the questions to help you with your ideas.

In pairs, tell your partner about your strange animal.

16 AMAZING ANIMALS

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Animals

1 Match the photos A-J to the words in the box.

EP

bear	chicken	duck	elephant	insect
lion	monkey	mouse	rabbit	rat

116 Listen, check and repeat.

2 Complete the table with the words in Ex. 1. Which of the animals can you keep as pets?

Wild animals	Farm animals	Both

Now add other animals that you know.

3 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 Which of the animals in Exercise 2 can help people?
- 2 How do they help?
- 3 What can they do?

4 Look at the photos on page 91. Are these wild animals, pets or farm animals?

Now read the story quickly. Which animal helped Jack?

5 Choose the best title for the story.

- 1 A quiet walk in the forest
- 2 Bear to the rescue
- 3 Alone with a mountain lion

6 Read the story again and answer the questions.

- 1 What time of year was it?
- 2 Was Jack walking in this area for the first time?
- 3 How many bears did he see?
- 4 Was the bear afraid of Jack?
- 5 What jumped onto Jack's back?
- 6 Which was the larger animal, the mother bear or the mountain lion?
- 7 What did the bear do next?
- 8 What did the mountain lion do next?



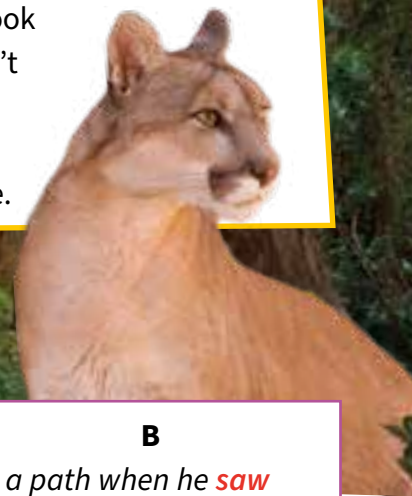
ABOUT YOU

11 Watch the video then ask and answer the questions in pairs. What animals do people in your family have? Do you like visiting zoos? Why? / Why not? Is there any animal in particular that you like?



One day in May, Jack Smith was walking in Northern Oregon. It was a place he liked walking in and he knew it well. He was walking along a path when he saw a black bear, a female with her two babies. One was about a year old, the other was only a few months. Jack stopped to watch the bears. Because Jack walked along the path regularly, the bear knew who he was. It wasn't afraid and it didn't try to attack him. While Jack was watching the bears, something large and heavy hit him from behind. It was a mountain lion! Jack tried to get away

from the mountain lion. Then, while he was fighting it, the mother bear ran towards him. But the bear didn't attack Jack, it attacked the mountain lion. The bear was much bigger than the mountain lion. While the mountain lion was attacking Jack, the bear stood on its two back legs and pulled the mountain lion off Jack's back. The mountain lion ran off into the trees. Then the bear went back onto its four feet and looked at Jack for a moment, before it walked back to look after its babies. Jack wasn't badly hurt. He was sure the bear recognised him and wanted to save his life.



GRAMMAR

Past simple and past continuous

1 Look at this sentence from the story and answer the questions.

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 152

2 Find three sentences with *while* in the story. Answer questions 2 and 3 in Ex. 1 about them.

3 Find all the other examples of the past simple and the past continuous in the story.

4 Complete the sentences with the past simple and the past continuous.

0 The boy was eating (eat) an ice cream when the monkey stole (steal) it.

1 The cats _____ (sleep) outside when the rain _____ (start).

2 While the girl _____ (read) a book, her phone _____ (ring).

5 Correct the mistakes with the past simple and past continuous.

1 When we looking for the lions at the zoo yesterday, we found the elephants.

2 Yesterday while I came back home, I dropped my purse in the road.

6 In pairs, take turns to say sentences with *when* or *while* and the past simple or past continuous. Use the verbs in the box and animals on page 90.

climb drive eat find open
run sit talk walk write

A He *was walking* along a path when he *saw* a black bear.

B

1 Which verb is past simple, and which verb is past continuous?

2 Which action, **A** or **B**, started first?

3 Which action, **A** or **B**, interrupted the other?

3 The teacher _____ (arrive) while Katie and Adam _____ (play) a computer game.

4 Lucy _____ (eat) her lunch when she _____ (hear) the news.

5 The boy _____ (fall off) his board while he _____ (skate) in the park.

3 When I waiting for the bus, I saw a monkey.

4 When we walk beside the lake, we heard a noise behind us.

5 It is snowing when I went there and very cold.

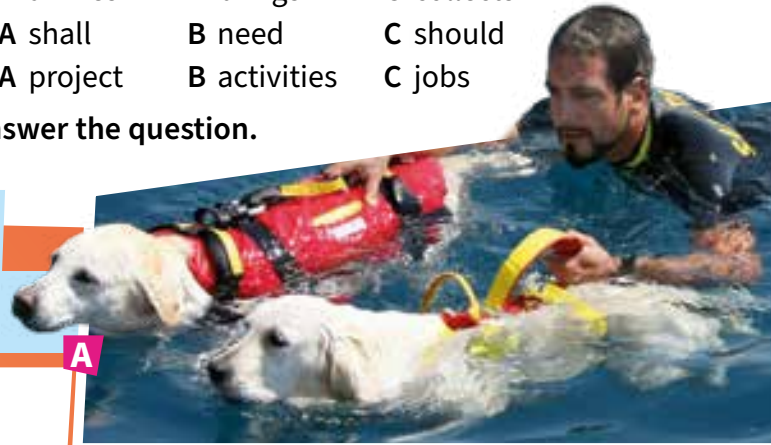
While the man was driving along the road, a monkey jumped out of a tree.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. How are these animals helping people? Do you think it is bad to use animals in this way? Discuss your ideas with your partner.
 - 2 Read Part 1 of the article. Match two of the photos A–C to this part of the article. Then find three things that guide horses can do and two things that monkey helpers can do.
 - 3 Look at the photos again. What do you think Part 2 of the article is about? Read it quickly to check your ideas. Then choose the correct answer for each gap.
- | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 1 A busy | B free | C favourite | 4 A arrives | B brings | C collects |
| 2 A help | B look | C make | 5 A shall | B need | C should |
| 3 A tells | B speaks | C says | 6 A project | B activities | C jobs |
- 4 In pairs, look at all the choices for Ex. 5 again and answer the question. How did you choose the correct answers?

Our Animal Friends

118



Animals can help people in many different ways. They can help people in their homes and in their daily lives. They can also save people when they are in danger, for example in the mountains or in the sea. When people think of animal helpers, most people think of guide dogs for the blind (people who can't see). But do you know about guide horses? These small horses help blind people move around a city or town. For example, they travel with them in taxis, cross roads and even help them get on and get off buses. Horses live much longer than dogs, so they can be with the person for a long time. Other animals can be helpers too. Monkeys are very clever and can look after people in many different ways. They can pick up your phone when you drop it. They can turn on the television for your favourite programme and turn off the television when it finishes. However, many people think that monkeys shouldn't be animal helpers because they are wild animals.

2 Most dogs are good at swimming but the dogs in the photo are very, very good at it. They work on ¹..... beaches in Italy during the summer, keeping people safe in the sea. They can jump from helicopters and fast boats, and ²..... people in danger in the water. 'Dogs don't get tired as quickly as we do,' ³..... Emilio, their trainer. 'A dog is strong and it can swim fast. It gets to a swimmer faster than we can and then it ⁴..... the person back to the beach.' It takes three years to teach these dogs everything they ⁵..... to know. Then they are ready to do their ⁶..... . People often think of animals as their friends, but these amazing animals are much more than that.



TALKING POINTS

Were you surprised by any of the animal helpers in the article? Which ones? Why? Discuss your ideas with your partner.

1 Match the phrasal verbs from Part 1 of the article to the meaning. Then complete each sentence with one of the phrasal verbs in the correct tense.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 get on | a start something working |
| 2 get off | b stop something working |
| 3 look after | c take something off the floor |
| 4 pick up | d enter a bus, train, plane or boat |
| 5 turn off | e leave a bus, train, plane or boat |
| 6 turn on | f help someone when they are ill or cannot do something themselves |

- 0 It was starting to rain when I got off the bus, so I opened my umbrella.
- 1 Please _____ your bags from the floor and put them on the shelf.
- 2 Finally, the boat arrived to take us across the lake. But it was full and we couldn't _____.
- 3 I can only do my homework when it's quiet. Please can you _____ the radio?
- 4 I _____ my mum when she was ill. I made her meals and drinks.
- 5 I woke up suddenly in the night and it was very dark, so I _____ the light.



PRONUNCIATION /u:/ and /ʊ/



119 2 Listen to the sounds /u:/ and /ʊ/.

Then put the words in the box in the correct columns.

do	food	foot	good	group	look
move	put	suit	took	true	two

/u:/ move	/ʊ/ look
_____	_____



120 Listen and check. Then repeat.

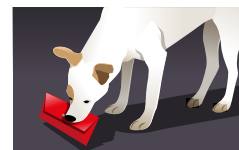
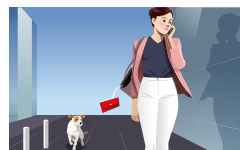


LISTENING

121 1 Listen to the radio interview between Jim Townes and Sue Green. Sue talks about things children learn from looking after pets. How many things does she talk about?

121 2 Now listen again and make notes in the chart about what Sue says children learn from pets. Do you think Sue is right? What other things can children learn when they look after a pet?

Food	Keeping them clean	Animals, not toys
------	--------------------	-------------------



WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE A story

GET READY Look at the three pictures. What does each one show?

PLAN In you have to write about all of the pictures. Read the questions and make notes.

- 1 What happened in the first (second, third) picture?
- 2 What was the end of the story?

WRITE Write the story shown in the pictures. Write 35 words or more.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own story and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their story better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your story.

PROTECTING ANIMALS



LIFE SKILLS

Protecting animals

We can protect animals in the wild by:

- making sure they have food and water
- making sure they have a safe place to live
- being kind to them.

1 Read the sentences. Answer the questions.

Animals are not toys.

We should be kind to animals.

- 1 Do you agree with the sentences? Why? / Why not?
- 2 Which sentence do you prefer? Why?
- 3 Do you have a pet? Have you ever visited an animal reserve or seen a wild animal?

2 Think of the animals in your country and answer the questions. In pairs, compare your ideas.

Which are in danger? What problems do they have? Can people help them? How?

3 Look at the title of the article and the photos. How do bees help us? Why is it important to protect bees? What is the bee collecting in the photo? Read the article quickly. Check your answers.

4 Read the text again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 Bees are not important animals.
- 2 Bees help us to make candles.
- 3 Bees are in danger in some places.
- 4 Michaela has a blog.
- 5 We cannot help protect bees and other insects.

122



save the bees!

1

Are bees important?

Bees are a very important part of our **ecosystem**. Bees **pollinate** plants. In fact, about 30% of the food we eat depends on bees. Bees help people in other ways too. For example, they make the honey we eat and **wax** for candles and cleaning wood. In many areas of the world, bees are in danger. People build houses, offices and factories on their homes. Farmers use strong chemicals on plants to stop insects eating them. But these chemicals also kill bees.



2

How does Mikaila Ulmer help bees?

Mikaila Ulmer, from Texas, is a girl who has her own lemonade company. She gives part of the money she makes selling lemonade and other products to **charities** to save bees. She teaches people about the importance of bees and how they help us. Mikaila has her own blog called Beelieve Blog. On her blog she shares information about her company and her projects.



3

How can we help bees and other insects?

There are a lot of different ways we can help **protect** bees and other insects. For example, we can:

- use fewer chemicals on plants
- learn more about organisations and people working to protect insects and their homes
- learn more about insects and how they help us
- start a blog on an animal or insect you think needs our help.





5 Match the highlighted words in the text to the meanings.

- 1 we use this to make candles
- 2 moving pollen from one plant to another
- 3 organisations helping something or someone and raising money
- 4 all the plants and animals in one place and how they live together
- 5 to keep safe



TALKING POINTS

Do you like bees or are you afraid of them? What other animals are in danger?



123 6 Listen to Jayden and Alice talking. What are they talking about?

- a They are talking about making honey.
- b They are talking about birds and turtles in the wild.
- c They are talking about rescue centres and volunteer jobs.



123 7 Listen again and write Alice or Jayden.

- 1 _____ is looking at a website.
- 2 _____ is afraid of bees.
- 3 _____ says we get honey and wax from bees.
- 4 _____ finds a centre with rabbits, cats, dogs and rats.
- 5 _____ has music lessons on Saturday mornings.
- 6 _____ is going to call to find out more.

8 Look at the list (a–f). Number the top three ways you think we can help animals. Compare your answers with your partner.

- a We can **donate money**.
- b We can **protect** animals.
- c We can **volunteer** our time.
- d We can **make sure that animals have food and water**.
- e We can **protect their homes**.
- f We can **find out ways to help** animals.

9 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

donate make sure protect volunteer

- 1 I want to _____ at an animal rescue centre at weekends.
- 2 There are a lot of different ways to _____ animals. You can find out more online.
- 3 I want to _____ part of my pocket money to an animal rescue centre.
- 4 We need to _____ animals have safe homes, food and water.

PROJECT

A poster about protecting animals

In small groups, make a poster about protecting animals.

- Choose an animal. Is it a pet or a wild animal? How big is it?
- Design a small poster to help people know more about your animal. Include:
 - pictures of your animal or its home
 - what your animal needs
 - how people can help your animal
 - how we can protect it.
- Take turns presenting your posters to another group.
- Display posters in the classroom.

VOCABULARY

1 Find the odd word out in each set.

- 1 library insect bridge post office 3 helicopter bicycle bus roundabout
 2 race headache temperature pain 4 deep rest wide high

2 Read the definitions and complete the words.

- 1 You put this on to keep you dry when it is wet. r _ _ n _ _ a _
 2 You stop your car and wait when this is red. You go when it is green. t _ _ _ f _ c _ i _ h _
 3 We get eggs and meat from this farm animal. c _ _ c _ _ _
 4 This is an animal and also something we use with our computers. m _ _ s _
 5 Doing lots of this keeps you healthy. e x _ _ _ i _ e

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

- 1 I was late for school this morning because I _____ the wrong bus!
 2 The football match starts in a few minutes. Please can you _____ the TV?
 3 While I _____ the train, I fell down and hurt my leg.
 4 My sister was ill yesterday, so my dad stayed at home to _____ her.
 5 It's important to _____ your mobile phone when you're at the cinema.
 6 At the weekends, I _____ rubbish at our local park.

get on
 get off
 look after
 pick up
 turn off
 turn on

GRAMMAR

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences 1–4. Then correct the mistakes in the sentences 5–7.

- 1 I ate with my family *out* / *outside* the tent. 5 I liked the tennis match because Nadal and Grigor Dimitrov are playing.
 2 It's very easy to get to the sports centre because it's *in front of* / *opposite* my house. 6 In Thailand, I visited many places and the most interesting thing is eating the food there.
 3 I took a trip *through* / *down* the River Nile. 7 It is raining in Taipei when we got there yesterday.
 4 You *shall* / *should* bring some of your computer games.

2 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

- 1 When I _____ (arrive) at the party, my friend _____ (sing) in the living room.
 2 I _____ (walk) around the shops when I _____ (meet) my friend.
 3 My dad _____ (call) me while I _____ (do) my homework.
 4 I _____ (not run) when I _____ (hurt) my foot. I _____ (dance).
 5 I _____ (not see) any animals when I _____ (walk) in the snow.

3 Give these people advice using *should* or *shouldn't*.


- 1 My running shoes are too small. 4 I don't know the way to the museum.
 2 I really want a pet! 5 The weather's really hot and I want to go to the beach.
 3 I've got nothing to wear to my friend's party.

WRITING

- 1 Look at the three pictures. Write the story shown in the pictures. Use 35 words or more.



LISTENING

- 124  1 For each question, choose the correct answer. Listen to Tessa talking to her father about her friends. What problem does each person have?

Example:

0 *Eva* G

People		Problems
1 Leon	<input type="checkbox"/>	A foot hurts
2 Nat	<input type="checkbox"/>	B broken arm
3 Maddie	<input type="checkbox"/>	C feels sick
4 Ilsa	<input type="checkbox"/>	D has a cold
5 Greg	<input type="checkbox"/>	E headache
		F leg hurts
		G temperature
		H toothache

SPEAKING

- 1 Put the words in order to make questions.
- 1 feel / how / you / start / when / do / school / holidays / the / ?
 - 2 your / animal / favourite / what's / ?
 - 3 weather / you / best / of / what / like / kind / do / ?
 - 4 do / like / you / when / it's / doing / what / snowy / ?

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Take turns to speak.

- 2 In pairs, talk about where you live. Take turns to speak.

Tell me about where you live.

I live in a small town. There's a park near the ...



17 WHAT ARE YOU WATCHING?

ABOUT YOU

How often do you watch TV?
Do you watch more TV on your laptop,
on your smartphone or on the television?



VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Television

125 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Listen, check and repeat.

EP

cartoons channels fan live on demand on TV programme
records remote control stream talent show the news

- 1 It's so easy to watch TV these days. You can _____ anything at any time.
- 2 I like to know what's happening in the world, so I watch _____ every day.
- 3 TV with people is OK, but it's more fun watching _____, like *Tom and Jerry*.
- 4 Which _____ do you want to watch?
- 5 Please give me the _____. I want to turn on the television!
- 6 Watch our new _____ tonight. There are six young singers. Choose the best.
- 7 My brother's a big _____ of Manchester United. He watches all matches.
- 8 Our television can get more than 100 _____. I never know what to watch.
- 9 I like choosing what to watch, so I watch most of my television _____.
- 10 Ed Sheeran is playing a concert tonight in London and they are showing it _____ on television, so I can watch it while he's playing.
- 11 When my dad goes on holiday, he _____ his favourite shows and watches them when he gets back.
- 12 Have you got a newspaper so we can see what's _____ this evening?

2 How do you watch television? In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 Do you often watch shows live, or do you watch them on demand?
- 2 Which programmes do you usually stream?
- 3 Do you like talent shows?
- 4 How many channels do you have at home?
- 5 Which cartoons do you like watching?

126 3 Listen to the conversation. Ella and Charlie meet in the street. What does Charlie invite Ella to do? Answer the questions.

- 1 When is the football match on?
- 2 Which channel does Ella think the game is on?
- 3 Why does Ella want to watch the game on a television and not on her laptop?
- 4 Where does Ella plan to watch the game?
- 5 Why does Ella want to watch it live?
- 6 What did Charlie's parents do last week?
- 7 What does Charlie ask Ella to do?
- 8 Where does Ella decide to watch the match in the end?

1 Look at the table and then complete the rule with one word.

I'm	I'm not	going to	watch the programme live. be on TV. watch the programme on demand.
He's	He isn't		
She's	She isn't		
It's	It isn't		
We're	We aren't		
You're	You aren't		
They're	They aren't		

We can use **(not) going to** + the _____ to talk about future plans.

» **GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 153**



PRONUNCIATION *going to*



2 Listen and repeat.

I'm going to watch it live at home on our big TV.
I'm going to watch it at Charlie's on his home cinema.

- Visit the new computer games shop.
- Play tennis.
- Go to the cinema.
- Go swimming.
- Watch a pop concert on TV.
- Go for a walk.

3 Read and choose activities for next weekend for Michael and Chloe from the list.



Chloe loves all kinds of sport. She likes being outside and going to the park with her friends. She doesn't like playing video games, and on TV she only likes watching cartoons. She sometimes goes to the cinema.

Michael loves reading and going to the cinema. He doesn't go out with his friends very much, but he loves playing computer games and watching anything on TV. He likes watching tennis, but he doesn't play, and he sometimes goes swimming.



4 In pairs, answer the questions.

- 1 What is **Michael** going to do? What isn't he going to do?
He's going to visit the new computer games shop.
- 2 What is **Chloe** going to do? What isn't she going to do?
- 3 What are **Michael** and **Chloe** both going to do?

5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 I going to meet Grace at the park tomorrow. | 4 You can call me this evening because I not going to watch the match. |
| 2 We are going play tennis at on Sunday. | 5 They not going shopping this week. |
| 3 For my party I going to invite five friends. | |

6 In small groups, ask and answer questions. Look at the times in the box and talk about your plans. Say some things you're going or not going to do.

next summer next Sunday afternoon this evening tomorrow morning

A: *What are you going to do next Sunday afternoon?*

B: *I'm going to visit my granny and granddad. I'm not going to do any homework!*

READING

- 1 Do you watch TV talent shows? How many can you name?
- 2 Read the questions and talk about your ideas with your partner.
 - a Do talent shows tell people what to say or can they choose?
 - b What different kinds of talent shows are there?
 - c What do winners of talent shows usually get?
 - d Who chooses the winners?
 - e Are talent shows live?

128

TALENT SHOWS

What do you really know about talent shows?

Everyone knows *The Voice*! It's a talent show for people who want to become famous singers. All of the singers on the show are good and some of them are excellent! There are lots of other talent shows around the world as well. In many countries, talent shows are the most popular shows on TV.

1 There are shows like Got Talent for musicians, people doing magic, singers ... and lots more. There's a show for dancers, too. It's called *Strictly Come Dancing*. Every year there are new ideas for talent shows. There are even some national talent shows for robots and singing dogs!

2 Yes, most of the talent shows on TV are live. It's also possible to go to the **studio** and be a member of the **audience**. Then you can watch a talent show live on **stage**.

- 3 Read the article quickly and check your ideas. Complete the article with questions from Ex. 2. Answer the questions about the article.

- 1 What talent show is there for dancers?
- 2 Where can people go to watch the show live?
- 3 Who are the judges of talent shows?
- 4 What happens to the runners-up on talent shows?
- 5 Why are some of the people on talent shows a bit like actors?

3 I'm sure you know the answer to this one. Usually, the people watching the show on TV and in the theatre **vote for** who (or what!) they like best. Sometimes famous people are the **judges** as well. On *Masterchef*, only the professional chefs choose the winner.

4 In a **competition** there is always a **winner**. The winner of **the final** usually gets a **prize** and sometimes becomes a **star**. On some shows the **runner-up** gets a prize too and a few of them become stars. On a few shows, the winner gets nothing – but they often become famous!

5 Most of the time, the people on the shows can say, sing or do what they want to. Sometimes, the show tells them the words to say, so they are a bit like actors or **performers**. But this doesn't happen on all the shows.



TALKING POINTS

Which talent shows are popular in your country? Why? Which one do you like best? Why? Discuss with your partner.



1 Complete the sentences with the **words** from the article. Use each word **once only**.

EP

- 1 She's the best cook on the show. I want her to win the _____.
- 2 There were eight singers on a small _____. It was very crowded!
- 3 We went to see the live show in a very big _____.
- 4 He won a talent show four years ago. Now he's a big _____.
- 5 Sometimes the person who comes second, the _____, gets upset when another person wins.
- 6 I'd love to be in the _____ for *Got Talent* and watch the show live.
- 7 The _____ for some talent shows is money and the chance to make an album.
- 8 Talent shows often have three _____ and they choose the best person together.
- 9 Talent shows end with _____ and someone wins.
- 10 People can _____ their favourite person by text.
- 11 Some people like being on talent shows because they are _____ and like being on TV.
- 12 The _____ of a talent show always looks very surprised – and happy of course.

2 Work with a partner. Take turns to ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you have any competitions in your school or your town? What are they?
- 2 Can you name any winners or runners-up from talent shows?
- 3 When did you last vote for someone on a talent show?
- 4 What do you think the best prize for a talent show is?
- 5 Would you like to be in the audience for a talent show? Why?
- 6 Would you like to be a performer in a talent show?
- 7 Do you usually agree with the judges on a talent show?
- 8 Which stars or famous people started by winning a talent show?

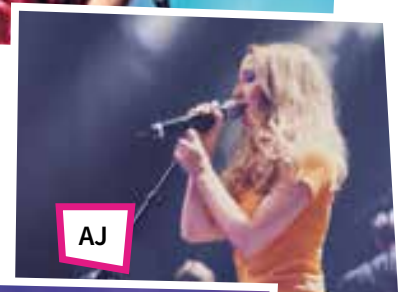


LISTENING

129 **1** Listen to Evie talking to her friend Ben about a talent show called *Singer Search*. Who won last night's show?

129 **2** Listen again. Which singer:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 had a fantastic voice? | 5 did Evie vote for? |
| 2 didn't choose the best song? | 6 wasn't a brilliant singer? |
| 3 looked nervous? | 7 had fantastic clothes? |
| 4 did Ben vote for? | 8 was the runner-up? |



SPEAKING

1 Ask and answer with a partner.

- 1 What TV programmes do you like to watch?
- 2 What's your favourite programme?
- 3 What was the last thing you watched?
- 4 Where do you watch TV at home?
- 5 Do you watch TV alone or with your family?

18

MAGAZINES AND BOOKS

TEEN Magazines

? ABOUT YOU

▶ 12 Watch the video then ask and answer the questions in pairs.
 What books do you like to read? What's your favourite book? Why do you like reading it? Does your school have a school newspaper or magazine? What do you like reading in your school newspaper/magazine?



Film Fan >



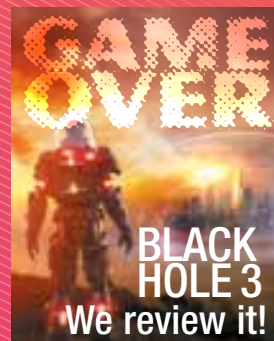
LOL! >



Mountain Bike Monthly >



Footie Time >



GAME OVER >



I Love Animals >

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Magazines

1 Look at the magazines. What do you think they are about? Discuss with your partner. Then match the magazine descriptions to the titles in the photos.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Out and about on rough roads | 4 Information on hundreds of animals |
| 2 The latest football news | 5 The newest and best films |
| 3 Music, fashion, TV, bloggers and vloggers | 6 All the new video games |

2 Which of these magazines would you like to read? Why? Tell your partner.

130 **3** Look at the words in the box. Match the words to the definitions. Listen and check. Then repeat.

advertisement article cartoon headline
 information interview photograph review

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 a written opinion about a book, film | 5 facts about a situation, person or event |
| 2 information about a product to make you buy it | 6 a funny drawing |
| 3 a written conversation usually between people | 7 the title of a magazine story in large letters |
| 4 a picture made using a camera | 8 a piece of writing in a magazine |

131  **4** Listen to three friends. They're making plans for their school magazine.

What things do the friends want to include in their magazine?

- 1 Is the magazine going to be on paper or online?
- 2 Is it going to be weekly or monthly?

GRAMMAR Making suggestions

1 Look at the four ways of making suggestions. Which one is different and why?

Why don't we write down some ideas now?

Let's have some stories too.

Shall we include advertisements?

Why not ask your dad about it?

Look at the way of making a promise.

Is it a positive sentence or a question?

I **will ask** him tonight.

advertisements articles about albums
book reviews cartoons film reviews
information about the school
interviews with teachers
music reviews photographs stories
video game reviews website addresses

A suggestion is a plan or idea that you want someone to think about.

Look at the examples from the recording.

The words in **red** are different ways of making suggestions.

A **promise** is when you tell someone that you will certainly do something. Look at the example from the recording. We use **will + infinitive** to make a promise.

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 154

2 Put the words in the correct order to make suggestions or promises. Add a full stop or a question mark and start the sentence with a capital letter.

1 **we** / **don't** / go / to / skatepark / **why** / the

2 to / **teach** / you / play / I / tennis / **will** / how

3 the / new / see / **let's** / film / Turkish

4 ask / come / Mina / **why** / to / **not**

5 meet / **we** / there / at / **shall** / eight

6 us / the / tickets / bus / **will** / for / I / **buy**

3 Complete the conversation. Use each **phrase** from Ex. 1 once. There is often more than one right answer.

Serena: ¹ _____ ask our teacher to help with the magazine? Is that a good idea?

Oliver: No. She's very busy. I ² _____ write a note and give it to all the teachers.

Serena: No, that's not a good idea. ³ _____ put a notice on the school website.

Oliver: Excellent idea.

Serena: ⁴ _____ write it now?

Oliver: OK. Magazine helpers wanted!

Serena: Great! ⁵ _____ write our names at the bottom?

Oliver: Good idea.

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

 1 Will we write a review about the film.

2 Lets go to the library after school.

3 Why we write a review about the school play?

4 Shall we to put reviews in the magazine?

PRONUNCIATION Intonation

132  **5** Listen and repeat the phrases from the conversation about the magazine.

No, that's not a good idea. No, I don't think so. Great! OK.

Excellent idea. Good idea.

6 In pairs, practise the conversation in Ex. 3.

7 » Work in small groups. Go to page 120.

READING

- 1 Look at two book covers. Do you know these stories? What are they about? Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- 2 Read the reviews and check your ideas.

Read and Review

133



Friday Barnes, Girl Detective

Friday Barnes, Girl Detective is about 11-year-old Friday Barnes. Her parents are always busy, **so** she spends her time reading. She reads lots of detective stories. Then some thieves steal some jewellery and, guess what, Friday is able to help her detective uncle catch them. **When** she gets a reward of \$50,000, she spends the money on going to a really good boarding school. The head teacher doesn't like Friday **because** she is different from the other students. Friday is clever, too, and she solves mysteries at the school with her friend Melanie.

I loved the book. I wanted to read it to the end **as** it's very exciting. This is the first Friday Barnes book, and I'm definitely going to read more.

Annika

Charlie and the Chocolate Factory

Charlie Bucket lives in a small house with his family. They're very poor. One day, Charlie finds some money on the street and he decides to buy a Wonka chocolate bar with it. **When** he opens the chocolate bar, Charlie finds a golden ticket inside. It's his lucky day! It's a ticket to visit Willy Wonka's famous Chocolate Factory. Charlie is very excited. Grandpa Joe is excited, too, **because** he can go on the visit with Charlie. As there are five golden tickets, four other children visit the factory as well. They all meet Willy Wonka and go around the factory. Lots of strange things happen! Only Charlie is left at the end, **so** he's the winner! What's the prize? Why not read the book and find out?

This book is very funny. I really liked it. It's so popular and there are two films of the book and a musical!



Josh

3 Read the reviews again and answer the questions.

- 1 How old is Friday?
- 2 Why does she read a lot?
- 3 What does she like reading?
- 4 What does she do with the \$50,000?
- 5 What do Friday and Melanie do at the school?
- 6 What does Annika think of the book?
- 7 Where does Charlie get the money for the chocolate bar?
- 8 Who is Willy Wonka?
- 9 Who goes with Charlie to the factory?
- 10 Who wins the prize at the end?
- 11 What does Josh think of the book?



TALKING POINTS

Which of the two books would you like to read? Why?

VOCABULARY

as, because, so and when

1 Look at the reviews again. We use the **words** to connect ideas in sentences.

EP Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 The Head Teacher doesn't like Friday | a as it's very exciting. |
| 2 I wanted to read it to the end | b so he was the winner. |
| 3 When he opened the chocolate bar, | c because she is different from the other students. |
| 4 Charlie was left at the end, | d Charlie found a golden ticket inside. |

2 Find more sentences with **as, so, because, when** in the reviews on page 104.

3 Complete the review of the play with the **words** from Ex. 1.


Romeo AND Juliet


by William Shakespeare

Romeo and Juliet is a really sad story about two young people. Their families don't want them to marry ¹..... the families hate each other. However, Romeo and Juliet are in love and they get married. They know their families will be very angry, ²..... they don't tell them. Juliet's family finds a husband for her. But she can't marry this man ³..... she's already

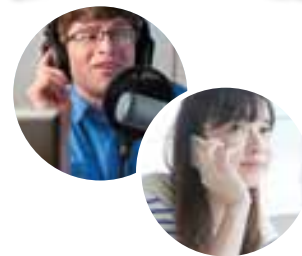
married to Romeo. Juliet is unhappy. She drinks something to make her sleep, so her family will think she's dead. Romeo finds Juliet first and thinks she's dead, so he kills himself. But Juliet isn't dead! ⁴..... she wakes up, she sees Romeo is dead and kills herself. That's the end! I saw the play at the City Theatre. The actors were all great. I loved it. Go and see it.

LISTENING

134  1 Listen to part of the radio programme: *Good Morning Mike*. Phoebe phones in to review a film. What's the name of the film Phoebe is talking about?

134  2 Listen to the review again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x).

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Phoebe lives in London. | 4 The School of Rock get first prize in Battle of the Bands. |
| 2 The guitar player gets a job in a school. | 5 Phoebe watched the DVD of the film last week. |
| 3 Everyone in the The School of Rock band is a teacher. | 6 Phoebe thinks the film is very good. |



WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE A review

GET READY Read the three reviews on pages 104 and 105 again. Which parts of the reviews *tell the story* of the book the writers' *opinions*? What tense do we use for writing a review?

PLAN Think about a film, play or book that you like. Make notes about: the story of the film, play or book; your opinion.

Organise your ideas into two paragraphs.

- Paragraph 1: the story of the film.
- Paragraph 2: your opinion.

WRITE Write your review of a film, a play or a book in about 50 words. Use the correct tenses. Connect your ideas with *as, because, so, when*.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your review and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Rewrite your review and give it to your teacher for a class magazine.

CULTURE

BRITISH TV AROUND THE WORLD

1 In pairs, discuss the questions with your partner.

- 1 Can you name any British TV programmes?
- 2 Do you prefer watching cooking shows, nature programmes or dramas?
- 3 How often do you watch TV in English?

2 Read and match the photos (A–C) to the texts. Who do you think is the most similar to you?

3 Match the headings to the texts.

Talent shows Nature shows Cooking shows

4 Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- 1 What does Brad like doing?
- 2 What is Ryan's favourite show? Why?
- 3 When do Eve and her family watch nature programmes?
- 4 Why does Eve's brother like *The Blue Planet*?
- 5 What music programme does Karen like? Why?

5 Complete the sentences with the highlighted words in the text.

- 1 I love sea animals. I love swimming too and I'm taking a course, so I can go diving.
- 2 When I go on nature walks I like taking photos of birds and animals in their
- 3 I'm always at home to watch my favourite TV programme. I never it!
- 4 We need to help our and keep it clean.
- 5 On talent shows people can sing, dance and do magic or

FACTFILE

British TV

British TV programmes are popular around the world. According to the BBC, there is an increase in people watching British TV in different countries. People watch programmes from their own countries too, but thanks to internet and cable TV, it's easier than ever to watch international programmes. British talent shows, cooking shows, nature programmes and dramas are all popular with international viewers.

THAT'S ENTERTAINMENT!

Watching television is a popular free-time activity for many people around the world. Find out more about what young people are watching – and why.



RYAN New Zealand

1
My parents' friend Brad has a small restaurant in Auckland and he loves cooking. I sometimes go to visit him with my parents at weekends. When we go to his house, we walk around town during the day. Then, we love watching shows and competitions about cooking in the evening. Brad's favourite show is **MasterChef** because it gives him ideas for his restaurant. I prefer **The Great British Bake Off** because I love cooking and eating cakes and sweets!



TALKING POINTS

Do you know the programmes Ryan, Eve and Karen are talking about? Do you watch them? Which ones don't you like? Why?





135

EVE 📍 Canada

2
I love going on nature walks with my family and watching wildlife. In the evenings when it's too cold or too rainy to do things outside, my family and I like watching programmes about science or animals at home. My older brother loves **scuba diving** so his favourite programme is **The Blue Planet**. Mum and I love watching **Elephant Diaries**. This TV show helps baby elephants return to their **natural habitat**.

KAREN 📍 Northern Ireland

3
I have to do my homework first before I watch TV, but one programme my parents never **miss** is Britain's Got Talent. They love it when there are people on the show doing gymnastics or **acrobatics**.
I love music, singing and dancing. I get bored watching Britain's Got Talent because a lot of people on the programme do other things. I'm a good singer, so I prefer watching The Voice in my free time.

136 **6** Listen to John talking to his friend Amber about his homework. Which show is he going to write about?

- a Horrible Histories
- b Britain's Got Talent
- c MasterChef Junior

136 **7** Listen again and choose the correct words, a or b.

- 1 John is doing homework
 - a for his German lesson
 - b for his French lesson
- 2 John likes watching on TV.
 - a different programmes
 - b French programmes
- 3 Amber watching cooking programmes.
 - a loves
 - b dislikes
- 4 John likes learning
 - a new meals
 - b new songs
- 5 Amber what *Horrible Histories* is.
 - a doesn't know
 - b knows
- 6 John loves
 - a reading about nature
 - b reading about history

136 **8** Listen to the conversation again and write the things John likes about the programmes.

PROJECT

A TV programme timetable

You are working at a TV station and making plans for a new channel. In small groups, plan a programme timetable for Saturday day times from 10 a.m. to 2 p.m.

Make a list of possible programmes you think people like. Decide on the times of the programmes. Think of why the programmes are interesting and what people can learn from them.

Fill in the table in your notebook.

Time	Programme (title/name of programme or type of programme (comedy, nature show, drama ...))	Audience (children, teenagers, adults)	Why is the programme interesting?
10 a.m. - a.m.		It is for	People can learn

Present your ideas to another group. Tell the class about your programme timetable. Decide on which programme timetable you like best.

▶ 13 NOW WATCH THE CULTURE VIDEO

19 SCHOOL CAN BE FUN!

ABOUT YOU

What kind of school trips do you go on with your school? Do you enjoy them? What was the last school trip you went on? What did you do?

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Trip activities

- 1 Look at the photos of people on school trips. What activities are they doing? Match the photos A–J to the words and phrases in the box.

canoeing cooking on a fire dancing at a disco
going on a nature walk going round a museum
going to an amusement park sailing
visiting a farm visiting an aquarium
watching a show

137 Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 2 In small groups, ask and answer the questions.
- Which of these activities do you do on school trips with your school?
 - Which ones do you enjoy?
 - Which ones would you like to try?
 - Which ones would you not like to do? Why not?

138 3 Listen to a teacher talking to a class about a school trip and answer the questions.

- Where is the Tall Trees activity centre?
- Which activities in Ex. 1 do you hear?

138 4 For each question, write the correct answer in each gap. Write one word or a number or a date or a time. Then listen again and check.



End-of-term school trip for Year 8

Name of Activity Centre: Tall Trees
Date we leave: 1 July
Time to get to school: 2 am
What to bring for the journey: 3

What to pack

✓ for water activities: 4 things
✓ for nature walks: trainers and 5

1 Match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Everyone has to be at school | a to eat. |
| 2 Mr Peters has to check | b smart clothes to the disco. |
| 3 You have to wear | c our uniform on the journey? |
| 4 You don't have to bring anything | d your names. |
| 5 Do we have to wear | e at eight o'clock |

2 Now read the examples and then complete the rules with a and b.

Everyone **has to** be at school at eight o'clock. You don't **have to** bring anything to eat.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 have to means | a no obligation: you have a choice and you can do this if you want. |
| 2 don't have to means | b obligation: You have no choice. You can't say 'no'! |

3 Complete the table with the correct form of *have to*.

Obligation	No obligation	Question form
I/you/we/they go	I/you/we/they go	..... I/you/we/they go?
He/she/it go	He/she/it go	..... he/she/it go?

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 155

139 4 Listen to Leo asking about the school trip. Tick (✓) the things he has to do.

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| get up early every day <input type="checkbox"/> | go to the disco <input type="checkbox"/> | help with the cleaning <input type="checkbox"/> |
| go sailing <input type="checkbox"/> | leave his phone at home <input type="checkbox"/> | do any schoolwork <input type="checkbox"/> |
| go swimming <input type="checkbox"/> | share a bedroom <input type="checkbox"/> | |

5 Make pairs of sentences about Leo using *have to/doesn't have to, can/can't*.

He has to get up early. He can't stay in bed late.

6 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 You need come! It's going to be a great concert. | 3 You pay nothing for the disco. It's free! |
| 2 We haven't to pay for the skate park. | 4 You has to pack warm clothes for the trip. |



PRONUNCIATION *have to / has to*

140 7 Listen and repeat.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 I have to go shopping. | 3 Do you have to go now? | 5 We have to write a story. |
| 2 He has to do his homework. | 4 Does he have to pay today? | 6 She has to win this match. |

8 In pairs, ask and answer about what you have to/don't have to/can/can't do this weekend. Use these ideas or your own.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| visit anyone? | go shopping? |
| do any homework? | do any cleaning? |
| get up early / late? | go to bed early / late? |

Do you have to visit anyone this weekend?

No, I can stay at home if I want to.

- 1 Read the first paragraph of the article. Do you think the flipped classroom sounds like a good idea? Why / why not?

THE FLIPPED CLASSROOM

What's it all about?

In a normal classroom, the teacher stands at the front of the room and gives a lesson and the students listen and take notes. Then they go home and do their homework. In a flipped classroom, everything is the other way around.

Students study at home from a textbook or online videos, and then discuss the topic and do 'homework' exercises or projects in class. Lots of schools are trying it, but is it a good idea? We spoke to a teacher and two students to find out more.

Penny – teacher

The flipped classroom is hard work for the teacher, especially at the beginning. You have to make videos of every topic in the textbook for the students to watch on their computers at home. That takes a really long time! But it means I can spend time in class helping students one-to-one. I love that – I wasn't able to do it before.

Caitlin – student

I love coming into the classroom ready to talk about the topic and feeling I understand it. In a normal class, I often feel nervous, because if I don't understand, I have to ask the teacher to stop the lesson and explain. But with a video, I can watch it as many times as I like until I understand it. It's great!

Dylan – student

We tried the flipped classroom for one term in maths, but there were a few problems. Some students didn't watch the videos before the lesson, so they couldn't do the exercises in class. Also, when the teacher was going round helping people, we found it really easy to stop working and just chat. We did a test at the end of the term and we all got terrible marks. I usually pass every test, but I failed that one.

- 2 Read the article and answer the questions. Say Penny, Caitlin or Dylan.

- Who said this about the flipped classroom?
- 1 If I need to, I can repeat parts of the lesson.
 - 2 I like being able to explain things during the lesson.
 - 3 Lots of us spent too much time talking to each other.
 - 4 I don't have to be scared about what's going to happen in the lesson.
 - 5 Getting everything ready wasn't easy.

- 3 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 What do you think are the best/worst things about flipped classrooms?
- 2 Would you like to try it? For which subjects?

VOCABULARY

School collocations

- 1** Match the verbs to the nouns to make phrases. Use the article on page 110 to help you. Some verbs go with than one noun.

do fail get give pass
study from take

an exercise a project homework a lesson marks notes a textbook a test

- 2** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I took lots of *notes* / *projects* in my last lesson.
- 2 I really hope I *pass* / *fail* this test!
- 3 Some people like studying from *textbooks* / *projects* and other people prefer videos.
- 4 The maths teacher gave us six *exercises* / *homework* to do at home.
- 5 I'm doing a history *project* / *homework* at the moment, about the Romans.

- 3** Compare your school with the one in the article. Use the phrases in Ex. 1.

They study from the textbook at home, but we use ours in class.

LISTENING

- 1** Maya goes to a boarding school. She sleeps there and only goes home for holidays. Listen to her describing her school. Number the photos in the order you hear about them.

- 2** Listen again. Complete the article Maya wrote with the missing words.

I go to a boarding school called Hartland School. It has about ¹..... students. I have to share a bedroom with ²..... other girls. We can put ³..... of our family on the walls. There's a library where we do our homework. We start studying at ⁴..... every evening. We work really hard at my school. We even have lessons on ⁵..... mornings! After homework, we can go to the ⁶..... room to have some fun. We have meals in a big ⁷..... and we have to help with the ⁸..... afterwards. We have to do sports at my school. Next term, we're going to do ⁹.....



SPEAKING

- 1** Make a presentation about your perfect school. Work with a partner. Plan what you want to say. Think about:

- a name for your school
- the size of your school
- places in your school
- what students can / can't do
- what students have to / don't have to do
- what the teachers are like
- what subjects you study

- 2** Present your ideas to another pair. Which school sounds most fun to go to?



TALKING POINTS

- 14** Watch the video about a school called Redroofs. In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

What do you like about your school? Is your school bigger or smaller than Redroofs? How many children are in your year? What subjects do you study? What are your teachers like?

20 FAMILIES

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Family

ABOUT YOU

In pairs, tell your partner three things about your family. Use some of these words:

brother/sister child/children
daughter/son father/mother
husband/wife

- 143 **1** Complete the table with the words in the box and the family words from About you. Listen and check. Then repeat.

aunt cousin grandchild granddaughter
grandfather grandmother grandparent
grandson nephew niece uncle

Male	Female	Male or female

- 144 **2** Listen to Kate describing her family. Complete her family tree with the names in the box. Then match the people in the photos to their names in the family tree.

Iris Jana Kasia Liz Rory Sue Wiktor

- 3** Make eight sentences about Kate's family tree. In pairs, compare your sentences with your partner's. Are any of your sentences the same?

Tony is Jessie's grandfather. Marek is Jana and Karolina's dad.

- 4** Look at the photos. Describe the people using some of the words in the box.

beautiful blonde dark fair
good-looking old pretty
short slim tall young

- 5** Draw your own family tree. In small groups, describe the people in your family.

1 Look at the sentences from the listening and think about the words in **red**.

These are adverbs of manner.

I know a bit of Polish but when people speak

fast, I can't understand them!

Jana plays the piano really **well**.

She wins **easily** every time we play!

Her family worked **hard**.

I have to hold it **carefully** because it's old.

» **GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 157**

2 Look at the sentences in Ex. 1. Find three adverbs that don't end in **-ly**. Write their adjectives.

3 Look at the spelling rules below and then write the adverbs for the adjectives in the box.

4 Complete the questions with adverbs from Ex. 1 and 3. Then in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

1 Do you do your homework _____?

2 Can you sing _____?

5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

1 Both teams played very good.

2 I thought that film was really badly!

Choose the correct words to complete the rules.

1 Adverbs of manner describe *how / when* we do things.

2 We make *many / all* adverbs of manner by adding *-ly* to an adjective.

Adjective	Adverb
slow	slowly (add <i>-ly</i>)
happy	happily (change <i>y</i> to <i>i</i>)
careful	carefully (double the <i>l</i>)

bad	easy	loud	noisy
quick	quiet	wonderful	

3 Do you speak _____ on the bus?

4 Do you play music _____ in your bedroom?

3 You should think about that very careful.

4 My friend ran really fastly in the race.



PRONUNCIATION The letter i

6 In pairs, look at the underlined letters. What sound does *i* make in the words? Put them into the correct column in the table. Listen and check.

child children find
interesting kind quickly
quite sing sister slim wife

/ɪ/ milk	/aɪ/ night

7 Complete the advice with the words in the box. Change the adjective into an adverb where necessary.

careful correct difficult happy important interesting

8 Complete the table about your family. Under *Interesting information*, put an adjective (e.g. *clever*) and a verb plus an adverb (e.g. *sings badly*). In groups, talk about the people in your table.

Family member	Interesting information
Mum	clever sings badly

How to find out about your family history

1 Families have lots of _____ stories in its past.

2 It's not too _____ to find out about your family history.

3 Ask older family members about their parents and grandparents. They will talk _____ for hours about this.

4 Listen _____ what they tell you.

5 The most _____ thing you need to find out is when and where people were born.

6 Write everything down _____ because you don't want mistakes in your family tree.

- 1 Look at the photo and describe it. What do you think it's like living in a big family? Write three ideas. Read the article quickly to see if your ideas are included.

What's it like to grow up in a big family?

by Ella Blackstone

146

I am the oldest of eight children. To me, my family is completely normal, but other people find it amazing. So, for everyone who's interested, here's what it's like to grow up in a big family!

Remembering the names, ages and birthdays of all your family members is **really** difficult. My parents often call my brothers and sisters by the wrong names. This is **probably** why our pets never had names.

Some of my friends get money for doing jobs around the house, but we **certainly** don't. In

our house, the dishwasher is on **nearly** all the time, there are always clothes to wash or put away, and the tidying up never ends. We all have to help, even the little ones.

Every shelf in our house is full of prizes, for basketball, tennis, cricket and rugby. We are all really competitive. The clever ones want to be the cleverest, the pretty ones the prettiest, and the funny ones the funniest.

Being slow is not a good thing in a big family. You have to move quickly to get into the shower or to get the best seat in the minibus (big families don't have cars). And you have to eat fast, especially if there's cake in the house!

Yesterday, I saw my 7-year-old sister in my old dress. She probably got it from my 15-year-old sister, who gets most of my things. We have to share bedrooms, toys, and even our parents' time. Sharing is not always easy, but we are **quite** good at it, luckily.

Life in a big family has its ups and downs, but I love it.



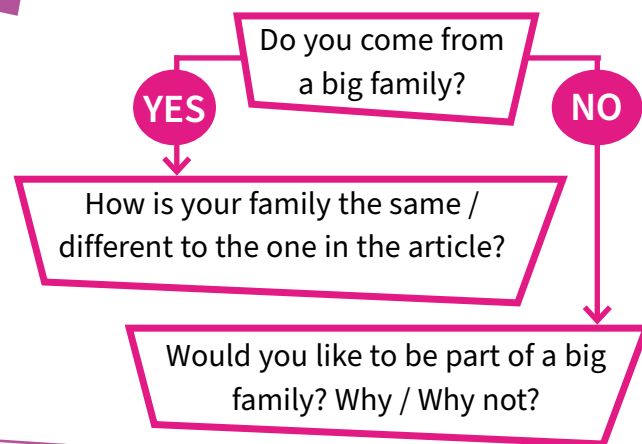
- 2 Read the article again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 Ella has seven younger brothers and sisters.
- 2 Her family enjoyed choosing names for their pets.
- 3 Ella and her brothers and sisters earn money from helping around the house.
- 4 The younger members of Ella's family also have to do jobs.
- 5 The children in Ella's family do well at sport.
- 6 Ella says being fast is useful in a big family.
- 7 She says she gave an old dress to her seven-year-old sister.
- 8 Her family hate sharing everything with each other.

In pairs, compare your answers.



TALKING POINTS



VOCABULARY

Adverbs of degree

1 Look at the **adverbs** in the article and match them to the meanings.

- EP 1 Which one means 'very much'?
 2 Which one means 'very close to'?
 3 Which one means 'not completely'?
 4 Which one means '100% true'?
 5 Which one means 'maybe'?

2 Complete each sentence with a different adverb from Ex. 1.

- 1 Sally's my best friend. I _____ like her.
 2 We all eat dinner together _____ every night.
 3 I'm not sure about this colour. It's _____ nice, I suppose.
 4 I don't know if Grace is coming to the party, but Tim _____ is. I know that for sure.
 5 'What's the time?' 'I'm not sure but it's _____ about 2 o'clock.'

3 Work in pairs. Write three true and three false sentences about your family using the adverbs in Ex. 1. Take turns to read your sentences and guess which are true and which are false.

My brother's really tall. My mum's probably driving at the moment.

LISTENING

147 1 Listen to three young people talking about who they live with. Match the speakers to the pictures of families A-C.



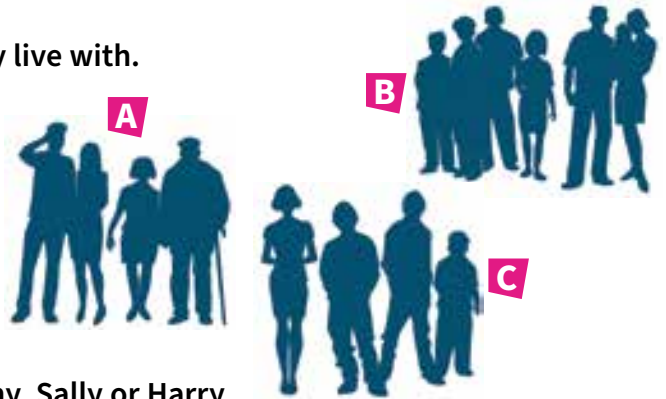
Sammy



Sally



Harry



147 2 Listen again. Who do you think is talking? Say Sammy, Sally or Harry.

- 1 I live with one of my grandparents.
 2 I have to travel quite a long way to see my dad.
 3 My sister is getting married soon.
 4 I don't spend a lot of time with my cousins.
 5 My brother and I sleep in the same room.
 6 There are two families in my home.

WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE

A description of your family

GET READY Read Sally's description. What kinds of words are missing from the gaps: grammar words or vocabulary words? Complete the description. Write ONE word for each gap. Example: ⁰ my _____

PLAN Make notes about your family.

WRITE Write a description of your family in 70 words or more.

I live with ⁰ _____ parents in a three-bedroom house. My grandfather lives ¹ _____ us as well – he's in the room next ² _____ mine. He tells lots of interesting stories. I've also got four cousins, and I love seeing ³ _____ too. They're ⁴ _____ bit older than me, and they don't look like me. I'm quite tall and I've got dark hair, but they're short and they've got fair hair. Write soon and tell me all about ⁵ _____ family.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your description and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their description better. Use your partner's advice to rewrite your description.

BEING A GOOD FRIEND



LIFE SKILLS

Being a good friend

A good friend understands your feelings; says sorry when they are wrong; understands you and knows when you have a problem.

1 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

It is better to have a few good friends than a lot of friends.

To know how someone else feels, put yourself in their shoes.

- 1 What do you think the sentences mean?
- 2 Do you agree with the sentences? Why? / Why not?
- 3 Which sentence do you prefer? Why?

2 Choose two qualities that you think are important in good friends. In pairs, compare your ideas. Now match the phrases from the box with the adjectives below.

attentive	helpful	honest
kind	positive	reliable

3 Read the text. Match sections 1–3 to photos A–C. Are you a good friend?

4 Complete the sentences with **highlighted** words from the text.

- 1 It's _____ to be a good friend to have friends.
- 2 It's not always easy to make and keep _____ friends.
- 3 Maybe your friend is worried about a bad _____ in an exam.
- 4 Good friends give _____ and they tell you the best thing to do in a difficult situation.
- 5 It is sometimes important to be _____ so you can know yourself.
- 6 Remember that the longest _____ you have is with yourself.



149 5 Listen to Karl talking to Martha. What does Martha do?

- a She tells Karl her problems. b She listens to Karl and tries to help him. c She calls Alex.

148



1

Friends are an important part of our lives. It's sometimes difficult to make friends and it's not always easy to keep them. To have **close** friends, it's **essential** to be a good friend. The big question is what can you do to be a good friend and keep your friends?

They listen carefully
 They make me feel good
 They are there for me when I have problems
 They help me do my best
 They always tell the truth
 They will never do you wrong

2

Good friends usually share interests and like doing the same things. They have fun together but they help each other in difficult times, too. For example, when someone gets a bad **mark** in an exam, does not get on the football team or feels sad or alone, a good friend tries to understand the situation and offers help.

Your friend is sad and you don't know what to do. Maybe you can call them, visit them or make them a card. When a friend is worried about an exam, you can help them study. If your friend doesn't get on the football team, you can practise together after school. Remember, a good friend listens carefully and gives **advice** when possible. So, listening to people and putting yourself in their shoes helps make, and keep, friends.



B

3

It's important to have friends to help you, but it's also necessary to know how to be **alone** and to be sure of yourself. Don't forget, the longest **friendship** in your life is with yourself!



C

149

6 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How do you know where Karl and Martha are?
- 2 Why is Karl feeling sad?
- 3 What did Karl do immediately after the argument?
- 4 According to Martha, what do good friends do?
- 5 Does Martha think Karl should call Alex that day?
- 6 When does Martha tell Karl to send a message?



TALKING POINTS

Who do you talk to when you need help and support? A friend? A family member? A teacher?

149

7 Now listen again and match the two halves of the sentences.



USEFUL LANGUAGE

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Why don't you ... | a wait until tomorrow. |
| 2 I think you should ... | b worry. |
| 3 You shouldn't ... | c to wait. |
| 4 It's a good idea ... | d send him a message? |

PROJECT

A helpful poster

In small groups, choose the problem A or B below. Talk together and think of some advice and write ideas in your notebook. Use expressions from Ex. 7.

- Draw a picture of the situation you chose.
- Make a poster with your advice and a picture.
- Present your poster to another group or to the class.

A I have no idea what to do. My best friend always says bad things about our friend Jack when he isn't with us. What should I do?

B My friend Anna is very sad these days. She spends her weekends alone and doesn't want to go out. I'm worried about her. How can I help her?

VOCABULARY

1 Write a word to link each group of words. Complete the words for them.

- | | | | | |
|------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 0 aunt | cousin | nephew | niece | f a m i l y |
| 1 study | pass | fail | teach | s _ _ o _ _ |
| 2 dance | music | friends | fun | d _ _ _ o |
| 3 headline | photographs | articles | advertisement | m _ _ _ z i _ _ e |
| 4 channel | remote control | the news programme | | t _ _ e _ i _ _ _ n |
| 5 winner | performer | prize | talent show | c _ _ p _ _ _ _ _ n |

2 Put the words in order to make questions. Then complete the answers with adverbs.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 can / dance / well / you / ? | No, I dance _____. |
| 2 easily / you / new / do / things / learn / ? | No, I have to work very _____. |
| 3 always / you / school / speak / do / at / quietly / ? | No, sometimes I speak _____. |

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

album cartoons fan reviews star the final

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 The film got good _____ in the newspapers. | 4 It's _____ of the talent show tonight. Then we'll know the name of the winner! |
| 2 I love Ed Sheeran's first _____. His music's really good. | 5 My favourite film _____ is Jennifer Lawrence. |
| 3 My little brother watches _____ on TV when he gets home from school. | 6 I'm a big _____ of rock music. I love it! |

GRAMMAR

1 Read the rules about entering the talent show. Complete Emma's email to Lauren with the words and phrases in the box.

can can't don't have to have to x3

TALENT SHOW

Rules for entering

AGE: 14 or over

GROUPS: possible but only up to five people

PRICE TO ENTER: £10 per person

Just fill in the form on our website!

Pay by 31 July.

To: Lauren Date 2 May
From: Emma

I've got some information about the talent show. You ¹ _____ be 14 or over to enter. We ² _____ enter as a group, but the group ³ _____ have more than five people in it. If we want to enter, we ⁴ _____ pay £10 each, and we ⁵ _____ fill in a form on the website. We ⁶ _____ pay yet; we can wait until the end of July. What do you think? Shall we do it?

- 2** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences 1–3 and correct the mistakes in the sentences 4–6.

- 1 He drives *very good / well*.
 2 The weather there was *very good / well*.
 3 *Shall / Can* you come to my house at 7?
 4 Why not to see a film?
 5 Why not trying phoning her later.
 6 Lets choose some more photographs.

LISTENING

- 150** **1** Listen to a boy called Owen talking about a picture of his family. Listen and write the correct letter beside each name. Which person is Owen?

Nora Colin Abby
 Lily Rob Liam
 Grace Max Ryan



READING

- 1** Write the correct answer in each gap. Write ONE word in each gap.

Dear Daisy
 I'm ⁰having a great time on my school trip here in Spain. I've made ¹
 new friend. She's staying in ² same activity centre as me. ³ name
 is Natalia and she comes ⁴ Ukraine. She's a year older ⁵ me.
 Yesterday morning, we went to visit a museum. There were
 lots ⁶ very interesting things there.
 See you soon.



SPEAKING

- 1** Put the words in order to make questions. Then in pairs, ask and answer the questions. Take turns to speak.
 1 kind / programmes / TV / like / you / do / what / of / ?
 2 activities / do / after / what / you / do / school / ?
 3 which / home / live / members / at / you / family / with / ?
- 2** Here are some pictures of different school trip activities. Do you like these activities? Say why or why not. Talk about the activities with your partner.
- 3** In pairs, ask and answer these questions. Which school trip activities do you like best? Then talk about school trips. Take turns to speak.

Do you think ...

- going to museums is boring? visiting theme parks is expensive?
 going camping is fun? visiting a castle is interesting?
 going on a nature walk is exciting?

A: Which is more fun, learning in a classroom or learning on a school trip?

B: What school trips would you like to do in the future?



UNIT 10 VOCABULARY AND READING, PAGE 58

2

Quiz result

More Yes than No answers.

You are careful with your money and want to buy things for a good price. You usually think and look before you buy.

More No than Yes answers.

You love clothes and shopping, and you like spending money. You don't always think before you buy and you spend a bit too much sometimes.

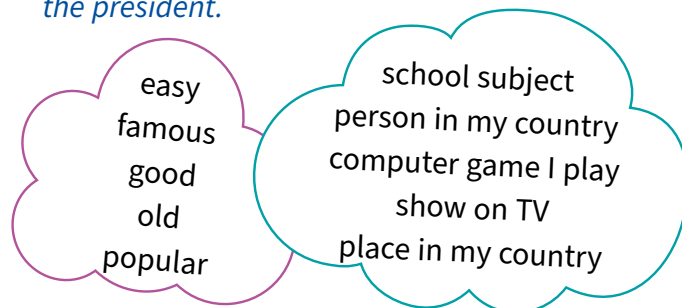
UNIT 10 PREPARE TO WRITE, PAGE 61

Well, I found a great jacket on the internet. It was black and it had a really cool design on the back. You can't pay in cash of course, so my mum paid for it with her credit card. After that, we waited and waited but it didn't come. After two weeks I emailed the company, but they didn't answer. Then, six days later, it finally arrived. But the jacket was the wrong size. It was too small *and* it was blue. I returned it and asked them to send me the right one, but they emailed me to say they didn't have one in my size in black. And my mum is still waiting for them to return her money.

UNIT 12 GRAMMAR, PAGE 69

7 Write true sentences with superlatives. Use the ideas below or your own ideas.

The most famous person in my country is the president.



Compare your answers with a partner.

UNIT 18 GRAMMAR, PAGE 103

7 In small groups, plan a class magazine.

Think about the questions.

What would you like:

- your class magazine to be called?
- to include in your class magazine?

Do you want it to be a paper magazine or an online one?

Is the magazine going to be weekly, monthly, termly or yearly?

Step 1 Suggest as many ideas as you can in your group for your class magazine.

Let's ...

Why don't we ... ?

Shall we ... ?

Why not ... ?

Step 2 Choose the five best ideas to share with the class. Tell the class.

Step 3 As a class, discuss and choose the best three ideas.

UNIT 11**SPEAKING, PAGE 67**

3 Student A will ask you for information about dishes A–C. Answer his or her questions.

Then ask Student A questions about items D–F on page 67. Use the following questions to help you.

What are the ingredients in ...?

Does ... contain meat?

What is ...?

How much is a bowl of ...?

Where is ... from?

Then choose the dish you want to buy.

A

American barbecue

Large burger £5.00

Ingredients: Meat, bun



Burger with cheese £5.50

Barbecue sauce 50p

Ingredients: Meat, cheese, bun

**B**

Aloo tikki 50p each

Ingredients: potatoes, peas, chilli, onions

**C**

Shish kebab £4.00

Ingredients: Chicken or lamb, onions, spices



UNIT 11 SPEAKING, PAGE 67

- 3 Student A, ask Student B questions about items A–C on page 67. Then choose the dish you want to buy. Use the following questions to help you.

What are the ingredients in ...?

Does ... contain meat?

What is ...?

How much is a bowl of ...?

Where is ... from?

Student B will ask for information about these dishes. Answer his or her questions.

D

Yakisoba

Fried noodles with vegetables,
meat and onions

small bowl £2.00

large bowl £3.00

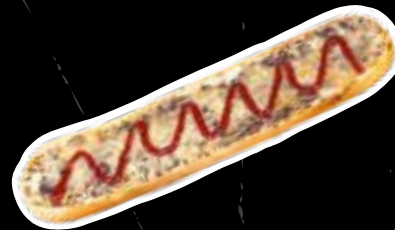


E

Zapiekanka

Bread with mushrooms
and cheese £1.50

or grilled meat served
with fried onions £3.20



F

Perepichka – ₴30 each

Lovely fried sausage
bread rolls



UNIT 1

SPORTS

do athletics /du: æθ'letɪks/ *займатися легкою атлетикою*

do gymnastics /du: dʒɪm'næstɪks/ *займатися гімнастикою*

go cycling /gəʊ 'saɪklɪŋ/ *займатися велоспортом*

go sailing /gəʊ 'seɪlɪŋ/ *займатися вітрильним спортом*

go skating /gəʊ 'skeɪtɪŋ/ *кататися на ковзанах*

go snowboarding /gəʊ 'snəʊbɔ:ɪdɪŋ/ *кататися на сноуборді*

go surfing /gəʊ 'sɜ:fɪŋ/ *займатися серфінгом*

play badminton /pleɪ 'bædmɪntən/ *грати в бадмінтон*

play baseball /pleɪ 'beɪsbɔ:l/ *грати в бейсбол*

play hockey /pleɪ 'hɒki/ *грати в хокей*

play rugby /pleɪ 'rʌɡbi/ *грати в регбі*

play table tennis /pleɪ 'teɪbl tenɪs/ *грати в настільний теніс*

play volleyball /pleɪ 'vɒlibɔ:l/ *грати в волейбол*

SPORTS EQUIPMENT

ball /bɔ:l/ *м'яч*

bat /bæt/ *бита*

board /bɔ:d/ *дошка*

racket /'rækt/ *ракетка*

stick /stɪk/ *ключка*

UNIT 2

DAILY ROUTINES

brush your hair /brʌʃ jɔ:r heər/ *розчісувати волосся*

check your messages /tʃek jɔ:r 'mesɪdʒɪs/ *перевіряти повідомлення*

clean your teeth /kli:n jɔ:r ti:θ/ *чистити зуби*

get dressed /get drest/ *одягатися*

have breakfast /hæv 'brekfəst/ *снідати*

leave the house /li:v ði: haʊs/ *виходити з дому*

prepare your school bag /prɪ'peər jɔ:r sku:l bæɡ/ *збирати ранець до школи*

put on your shoes /pʊt ɒn jɔ:r ʃu:z/ *взуватися*

tidy your room /'taɪdi jɔ:r ru:m/ *прибирати кімнату*

wake up /weɪk ʌp/ *прокидатися*

FOOD

avocado /ævə'kɑ:dəʊ/ *авокадо*

bread /bred/ *хліб*

cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ *капуста*

cereal /'sɪəriəl/ *пластівці*

cheese /tʃi:z/ *сир*

cucumber /'kju:kʌmbər/ *огірок*

fish /fɪʃ/ *риба*

fruit /fru:t/ *фрукт, фрукти*

honey /'hʌni/ *мед*

hot chocolate /hɒt 'tʃɒkələt/ *гарячий шоколад*

jam /dʒæm/ *джем, варення*

mango /'mæŋɡəʊ/ *манго*

pasta /'pæstə/ *паста, макаронні вироби*

rice /raɪs/ *рис*

toast /təʊst/ *тост*

vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/ *овочі*

yoghurt /'jɒɡət/ *йогурт*

UNIT 3

MUSIC

classical music /'klæsɪkəl 'mju:zɪk/ класична музика
drums /dɹʌmz/ барабани
electric guitar /ɪ'lektɹɪk ɡɪ'tɑ:ɹ/ електрогітара
hip-hop /'hɪphɒp/ хіп-хоп
jazz /dʒæz/ джаз
keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ клавішний інструмент
opera /'ɒpərə/ опера
piano /pɪ'ænəʊ/ фортепіано
pop /pɒp/ поп-музика
rap /ræp/ рен
rock /rɒk/ adjective/ рок
saxophone /'sæksəfəʊn/ саксофон
sopilka /sɒ'pɪlkə/ сопілка
soul /səʊl/ adjective/ соул
violin /vaɪə'lɪn/ скрипка

MUSIC PHRASES

become a singer /bɪ'kɒm ə 'sɪŋər/ стати співаком / співачкою
become famous /bɪ'kɒm 'feɪməs/ стати відомим (-ою)
give a concert /ɡɪv ə 'kɒnsət/ давати концерт
go on tour /ɡəʊ ɒn tuə/ їхати в тур
make a music video /meɪk ə 'mju:zɪk 'vɪdɪəʊ/ створювати музичне відео
play in a band /pleɪ ɪn ə bænd/ грати в музичному гурті
record an album /rɪ'kɔ:d ən 'ælbəm/ записати альбом
teach music /ti:tʃ 'mju:zɪk/ навчати музиці

UNIT 4

ADJECTIVES

amazing /ə'meɪzɪŋ/ неймовірний (-а)
awesome /'ɔ:səm/ вражаючий (-а)
brilliant /'brɪliənt/ блискучий (-а), розкішний (-а), чудовий (-а)
fantastic /fæn'tæstɪk/ фантастичний (-а)
fine /faɪn/ гарний (-а)
great /ɡreɪt/ чудовий (-а)
horrible /'hɒrəbl/ жахливий (-а)
lovely /'lʌvli/ милий (-а), приємний (-а)
OK /əʊ'keɪ/ добре
perfect /'pɜ:fɪkt/ ідеальний (-а), бездоганний (-а)
really good /rɪəli ɡʊd/ дійсно гарний (-а)
terrible /'terəbl/ жахливий (-а)
wonderful /'wʌndəfəl/ чудовий (-а)

EMOTIONS

afraid /ə'freɪd/ наляканий (-а)
angry /'æŋɡri/ злий (-а)
glad /ɡlæd/ радісний (-а)
happy /'hæpi/ щасливий (-а)
interested /'ɪntərəstɪd/ зацікавлений (-а)
nervous /'nɜ:vəs/ знервований (-а)
sorry /'sɒri/ засмучений
surprised /sə'praɪzd/ здивований (-а)
upset /ʌp'set/ сумний (-а)
worried /'wʌrɪd/ стурбований (-а)

UNIT 5

HISTORICAL EVENTS

climb /klaɪm/ підніматися (вгору)
cross /krɒs/ перетинати, переходити (міст/
вулицю/дорогу)
die /daɪ/ померати
open /'əʊpən/ відкривати
paint /'peɪnt/ малювати фарбами
play /pleɪ/ грати
publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ опублікувати
receive /rɪ'si:v/ отримувати
record /rɪ'kɔ:d/ записувати (пісню/альбом)
travel /'trævəl/ подорожувати

BUILDINGS

castle /'kɑ:sl/ замок, фортеця
cathedral /kə'ti:drəl/ собор
ceiling /'si:lɪŋ/ стеля
church /tʃɜ:tʃ/ церква
floor /flɔ:ɪr/ підлога, поверх
palace /'pælɪs/ палац
roof /ru:f/ дах
square /skweə/ площа
stairs /steəz/ сходи
statue /'stætʃu:z/ статуя

UNIT 6

JOBS

actor /'æktə/ актор
artist /'ɑ:tɪst/ художник, художниця
cook /kʊk/ кухар, кухарка
dentist /'dentɪst/ зубний лікар, зубна лікарка
engineer /,endʒɪ'nɪə/ інженер, інженерка
factory worker /'fæktəri wɜ:kə/ працівник (-ця)
фабрики
farmer /'fɑ:mə/ фермер, фермерка
manager /'mænɪdʒə/ менеджер, менеджерка
mechanic /mɪ'kænɪk/ механік, механікня
model /'mɒdəl/ модель
nurse /nɜ:s/ медсестра, медсестра
photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə/ фотограф,
фотографиня
pilot /'paɪlət/ пілот, пілотеса
police officer /pə'li:s 'ɒfɪsə/ поліцейський,
поліцейська
shop assistant /ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt/ продавець,
продавчиня
sports coach /spɔ:ts kəʊtʃ/ тренер, тренерка

WORK

boss /bɒs/ керівник, керівниця
busy /'bɪzi/ зайнятий (-а)
customers /'kʌstəməz/ клієнти, покупці
earn /z:ɪn/ заробляти
office /'ɒfɪs/ офіс
staff /stɑ:f/ персонал

UNIT 7

HOLIDAY ACTIVITIES

buy presents /baɪ 'prezənts/ *купувати подарунки*

do water sports /du 'wɔ:tə 'spɔ:ts/ *займатися водними видами спорту*

go camping /gəʊ 'kæmpɪŋ/ *ходити в походи*

go sightseeing /gəʊ 'saɪtsi:ɪŋ/ *ходити на екскурсії, оглядати визначні місця*

go to the beach /gəʊ tə ðə bi:tʃ/ *ходити на пляж*

lie on the beach /laɪ ɒn ðə bi:tʃ/ *лежати на пляжі*

ride a bike /raɪd ə baɪk/ *кататися на велосипеді*

stay at a hotel /steɪ ət ə həʊ'tel/ *зупинитися/ проживати в готелі*

take photos /teɪk 'fəʊtəʊz/ *фотографувати*

HOLIDAYS

airport /'eəpɔ:t/ *аеропорт*

coach /kəʊtʃ/ *автобус*

ferry /'feri/ *паром*

flight /flaɪt/ *політ, переліт*

guidebook /'gaɪdbʊk/ *путівник*

map /mæp/ *мапа*

passport /'pɑ:spɔ:t/ *паспорт*

station /'steɪʃən/ *станція, вокзал*

suitcase /'su:tkeɪs/ *валіза*

ticket /'tɪkɪt/ *квиток*

tour guide /tuə gaɪd/ *гід, екскурсолод*

tourist /'tuəɪst/ *турист, туристка*

UNIT 8

BEDROOM FURNITURE

armchair /'ɑ:m,tʃeə/ *крісло*

blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ *ковдра*

bookshelf /'bʊkʃelf/ *книжкова полиця*

carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/ *килим*

chest of drawers /tʃest əv drɔ:z/ *комод*

cupboard /'kʌbəd/ *кухонна шафа*

curtains /'kɜ:tənz/ *штори*

cushion /'kʊʃən/ *диванна подушка*

lamp /læmp/ *лампа*

mirror /'mɪrə/ *дзеркало*

photographs /'fəʊtəgrɑ:fs/ *фотографії*

FREE-TIME ACTIVITIES

draw pictures /drɔ: 'prɪktʃəz/ *малювати (малюнки/картини) олівцем*

listen to music /'lɪsən tə 'mju:zɪk/ *слухати музику*

listen to songs /'lɪsən tə sɒŋz/ *слухати пісні*

paint pictures /peɪnt 'prɪktʃəz/ *малювати (малюнки/картини) фарбами*

play computer games /pleɪ kəm'pjʊ:tə geɪmz/ *грати в комп'ютерні ігри*

play the drums /pleɪ ðə drʌmz/ *грати на барабанах*

play the guitar /pleɪ ðə gɪ'tɑ:/ *грати на гітарі*

play music /pleɪ 'mju:zɪk/ *грати музику*

read a blog /ri:d ə blɒg/ *читати блог*

read magazines /ri:d 'mægə'zi:nz/ *читати журнали*

read stories /ri:d 'stɔ:riz/ *читати історії*

write a blog /raɪt ə blɒg/ *вести блог*

write a diary /raɪt ə 'daɪəri/ *вести щоденник*

write music /raɪt 'mju:zɪk/ *писати музику*

write songs /raɪt sɒŋz/ *писати пісні*

write stories /raɪt 'stɔ:riz/ *писати історії*

UNIT 9

CLOTHES

boots /bu:ts/ чоботи

cap /kæp/ кепка

gloves /glʌvz/ рукавички

jumper /'dʒʌmpə/ джемпер, светр

scarf /skɑ:f/ шарф

socks /sɒks/ шкарпетки

suit /su:t/ костюм (чоловічий)

sunglasses /'sʌŋɡla:sɪz/ сонцезахисні окуляри

swimming costume /swɪmɪŋ kɒs.tʃu:m/
купальник

swimming shorts /swɪmɪŋ ʃɔ:ts/ плавки

tie /taɪ/ краватка

trainers /'treɪnəz/ кросівки

MATERIALS

cork /kɔ:k/ корок

cotton /'kɒtən/ бавовна

leather /'leðə/ шкіра

metal /'metəl/ метал

plastic /'plæstɪk/ пластик

wool /wʊl/ вовна, шерсть

UNIT 10

BUYING AND SELLING

bill /bɪl/ рахунок, квитанція

cash /kæʃ/ готівка

discount /'dɪskaʊnt/ знижка

price /praɪs/ ціна, вартість

purse /pɜ:s/ гаманець

receipt /rɪ'si:t/ чек

sale /seɪl/ розпродаж

wallet /'wɒlɪt/ гаманець, дамська сумочка

PHRASES WITH **FOR**

I sold my old games console **for** 50 euros. Я продав (-ла) свою стару ігрову приставку за 50 євро.

I bought these new shoes **for** the party. Я придбав (-ла) ці нові черевики для вечірки.

We need to have our project finished **for** next Wednesday. Ми повинні завершити цей проєкт до наступної середи.

Spain is famous **for** its food and climate. Іспанія відома своєю їжею та кліматом.

'Sneakers' is the American English word **for** 'trainers'. "Снікери" - це американська назва "кросівок".

UNIT 11

FOOD

burger /'bɜːɡə/ *бургер*
chicken legs /'tʃɪkɪn legz/ *курячі гомілки*
chili /'tʃɪli/ *перець чилі*
chips /tʃɪps/ *смажена картопля*
cola /'kəʊlə/ *кола*
cream /kri:m/ *вершки*
curry /'kʌrɪ/ *карі (страва)*
fresh vegetables /fref 'vedʒtəblz/ *свіжі овочі*
fried onions /fraɪd 'lɒnjənz/ *смажена цибуля*
grapes /greɪps/ *виноград*
grilled meat /grɪld mi:t/ *м'ясо на грилі*
lemonade /,lemə'neɪd/ *лимонад*
mineral water /'mɪnərəl 'wɔːtə/ *мінеральна вода*
noodles /'nuːdəlz/ *локшина*
omelette /'ɒmlət/ *омлет*
pancakes /'pæŋkeɪks/ *млинці, панкейки*
pasta with tomato sauce /'pɑːstə wɪð tə'mɑːtəʊ sɔːs/ *паста з томатним соусом*
mushroom /'mʌʃru:m/ *гриб*
salad /'sæləd/ *салат*
seafood /'siːfuːd/ *морепродукти*
soft drinks /sɒft drɪŋks/ *безалкогольні напої*
strawberry /'strɔːbəri/ *полуниця*
sweets /swiːts/ *солодоці*

UNIT 12

TECHNOLOGY

e-reader /'iːrɪ:də/ *електронна книга*
fitness tracker /'fɪt.nəs ˌtrækə/ *фітнес трекер*
games console /'geɪmz ˌkɒnsəʊl/ *ігрова приставка*
headphones /'hedfəʊnz/ *навушники*
keyboard /'kiːbɔːd/ *клавіатура*

laptop /'læptɒp/ *ноутбук*
mouse /maʊs/ *комп'ютерна миша*
play games /pleɪ 'geɪmz/ *грати в ігри*
printer /'prɪntə/ *принтер*
screen /skri:n/ *екран*
smartphone /'smɑːtfəʊn/ *смартфон*
speaker /'spiːkə/ *колонка*
tablet /'tæblət/ *планшет*

COMPUTERS AND THE INTERNET

buy clothes /baɪ kləʊðz/ *купувати одяг*
chat online /tʃæt 'ɒn.laɪn/ *спілкуватися онлайн*
chat (with) friends /tʃæt tə frendz/ *спілкуватися з друзями*
digital /'dɪdʒɪtəl/ *цифровий*
download /,daʊn'ləʊd/ *завантажувати*
download music /,daʊn'ləʊd 'mjuːzɪk/ *завантажувати музику*
download videos /,daʊn'ləʊd 'vɪdɪəʊz/ *завантажувати відео*
go online /gəʊ 'ɒn.laɪn/ *виходити в інтернет*
machine /mə'ʃiːn/ *машина, устаткування*
memory /'meməri/ *пам'ять*
save /seɪv/ *зберігати*
software /'sɒftweə/ *програмне забезпечення*
surf the internet /sɜːf ði 'ɪntənət/ *шукати (щось) в інтернеті; "сидіти" в інтернеті*
virus /'vaɪərəs/ *вірус*
visit websites /'vɪzɪt 'websaɪts/ *відвідувати веб-сайти*
watch videos /wɒtʃ 'vɪdɪəʊz/ *дивитись відео*

UNIT 13

ILLNESS

broken arm /'brəʊkən aɪm/ *зламана рука*

cold /kəʊld/ *застиуда*

a headache /ə 'hedetk/ *головний біль*

hurt /hɜ:t/ *боліти, спричиняти біль*

hurts /hɜ:ts/ *(щось) болить*

a pain /ə peɪn/ *біль*

feel sick /sɪk/ *відчувати нудоту*

a stomach ache /'stʌmək eɪk/ *біль у животі/ шлунку*

a temperature /ə 'temprətʃə/ *температура*

toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ *зубний біль*

HEALTH

do a race /du: ə reɪs/ *брати участь у забігах*

do some exercise /du: səm 'eksəsaɪz/ *виконувати фізичні вправи*

do some exercises in a gym /du: səm 'eksəsaɪzɪz ɪn ə dʒɪm/ *тренуватися у спортзалі*

eat well /i:t wel/ *добре харчуватися*

enter a race /'entər ə reɪs/ *взяти участь у перегонах*

feel healthy /fi:l 'helθi/ *почуватися здоровим*

get fit /get fɪt/ *прийти у (гарну) форму*

get some exercise /get səm 'eksəsaɪz/ *отримувати фізичні навантаження, виконувати фізичні вправи*

have a rest /hæv ə rest/ *відпочивати*

keep fit /ki:p fɪt/ *тримати тіло у формі*

sleep well /sli:p wel/ *добре спати*

stay healthy /steɪ 'helθi/ *залишатися/бути здоровим (-ою)*

take a rest /teɪk ə rest/ *взяти перепочинок*

try some exercises in a gym /traɪ səm 'eksəsaɪzɪz ɪn ə dʒɪm/ *спробувати тренування у спортзалі*

UNIT 14

PLACES IN A TOWN

bank /bæŋk/ *банк*

bridge /brɪdʒ/ *міст*

bus station /'bʌs ,steɪʃn/ *автостанція, автовокзал*

bus stop /'bʌs stɒp/ *автобусна зупинка*

café /'kæfeɪ/ *кафе*

car park /'kɑ: pɑ:k/ *паркінг*

cinema /'sɪnəmə/ *кінотеатр*

hospital /'hɒspɪtəl/ *лікарня*

hotel /həʊ'tel/ *готель*

library /'laɪbrəri/ *бібліотека*

market /'mɑ:kɪt/ *ринок*

museum /mju:'zi:əm/ *музей*

petrol station /'pet.rəl ,steɪʃən/ *автозаправна станція*

police station /pə'li:s ,steɪʃən/ *відділення поліції*

post office /'pəʊst ɒfɪs/ *поштове відділення*

playground /'pleɪgraʊnd/ *дитячий ігровий майданчик*

restaurant /'restɒrənt/ *ресторан*

roundabout /'raʊndəbaʊt/ *кільцева розв'язка*

shop /ʃɒp/ *магазин, крамниця*

sports centre /'spɔ:ts ,sentə/ *спортивний центр*

train station /'treɪn ,steɪʃən/ *залізнична станція, залізничний вокзал*

supermarket /'su:pəmə:kɪt/ *супермаркет*

swimming pool /'swɪm.ɪŋ ,pu:l/ *басейн*

street /stri:t/ *вулиця*

theatre /'θiətə/ *театр*

traffic lights /'træfɪk laɪts/ *світлофор*

university /ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/ *університет*

COMPOUND NOUNS

cycle tour /'saɪkl tʊə/ велотур
 guidebook /'gaɪdbʊk/ путівник
 postcard /'pəʊstka:d/ листівка
 raincoat /'reɪnkəʊt/ плащ, дощовик
 tour guide /tʊə gaɪd/ гід, екскурсуючий
 walking tour /'wɔːkɪŋ tʊə/ пішохідна екскурсія

UNIT 15**GEOGRAPHICAL FEATURES**

cliff /klɪf/ скеля, бескид
 deep /di:p/ глибокий (-а)
 field /fi:ld/ поле
 high /haɪ/ високий (-а)
 island /'aɪlənd/ острів
 lake /leɪk/ озеро
 long /lɒŋ/ довгий (-а)
 mountain /'maʊntɪn/ гора
 river /'rɪvə/ річка
 snow /snəʊ/ сніг
 water /'wɔːtə/ вода
 wide /waɪd/ широкий (-а)

THE WEATHER

cloudy /'klaʊdi/ хмарний
 foggy /'fɒgi/ туманний
 icy /'aɪsi/ крижаний
 rainy /'reɪni/ дощовий
 snowy /'snəʊi/ сніжний
 sunny /'sʌni/ сонячний
 windy /'wɪndi/ вітряний

UNIT 16**ANIMALS**

bear /beə/ ведмідь
 chicken /'tʃɪkɪn/ курка
 duck /dʌk/ качка
 elephant /'elɪfənt/ слон
 insect /'ɪnsekt/ комаха
 lion /laɪən/ лев
 monkey /'mʌŋki/ мавпа
 mouse /maʊs/ миша
 rabbit /'ræbɪt/ кролик
 rat /ræt/ щур

PHRASAL VERBS

get off /get ɒf/ виходити (з транспортного засобу)
 get on /get ɒn/ сідати (у транспортний засіб)
 look after /lʊk 'ɑːftə/ доглядати за (кимось/ чимось)
 pick up /pɪk ʌp/ піднімати, підбирати
 turn off /tɜːn ɒf/ вимикати
 turn on /tɜːn ɒn/ вмикати

UNIT 17

TELEVISION

cartoon /kɑːtuːn/ мультфільм
channels /ˈtʃænəlz/ телевізійні канали
fan /fæn/ фанат
live /laɪv/ *наживо (про концерт)*
the news /ðə ɪnjuːz/ новини
on demand /ɒn dɪˈmɑːnd/ *на вимогу*
on TV /ɒn ˌtiːviː/ *по телебаченню*
programme /ˈprɒɡræm/ телевізійна програма
record /rɪˈkɔːd/ *записувати*
remote control /rɪˈməʊt kənˈtrəʊl/ пульт
stream /striːm/ *транслявати*

ENTERTAINMENT

audience /ˈɔːdiəns/ глядачі, аудиторія
competitions /ˌkɒmpəˈtɪʃənz/ змагання
the final /ðə ˈfaɪnəl/ фінал
judges /dʒʌdʒɪz/ судді
performers /pəˈfɔːməz/ виконавці, артисти
prize /praɪz/ приз
runner-up /ˌrʌnəˈʌp/ учасник (-ця) змагань, що посів (-ла) друге місце
stage /steɪdʒ/ сцена
star /stɑːr/ зірка
studio /ˈstjuːdiəʊ/ студія
talent show /ˈtælənt ʃəʊ/ шоу талантів
vote for /vəʊt fə/ *голосувати за*
winner /ˈwɪnə/ переможець, переможниця

UNIT 18

MAGAZINES

advertisement /ədˈvɜːtɪsmənt/ реклама
article /ˈɑːtɪkl/ стаття
cartoon /kɑːtuːn/ мультфільм
headline /ˈhedlaɪn/ заголовок
information /ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃən/ інформація
interview /ˈɪntəvjuː/ інтерв'ю
photograph /ˈfəʊtəɡrɑːf/ фотографія
review /rɪˈvjuː/ відгук, рецензія

AS, BECAUSE, SO AND WHEN

I don't like talent shows **because** they are boring.
Мені не подобаються шоу талантів тому, що вони нудні.

My parents love watching *Britain's Got Talent* **as** it's so much fun.
Моїм батькам подобається дивитись "Британія має талант", тому що це дуже весело.

When they said Chris was the winner of *Star Voice*, I was surprised.
Коли сказали, що Кріс став переможцем "Зіркового голосу", я була здивована/був здивований.

I didn't have time to read the book, **so** I watched the film instead.
У мене не було часу читати книжку, тому я переглянув (-ла) фільм.

UNIT 19

TRIP ACTIVITIES

canoeing /kə'nu:ɪŋ/ *веслування на каное*

cooking on a fire /'kʊkɪŋ ɒn ə faɪə/
приготування їжі на вогні

dancing at a disco /dɑ:nsɪŋ ət ə 'dɪskəʊ/ *танці на дискотеці*

going on a nature walk /'gəʊɪŋ ɒn ə 'neɪtʃə wɔ:k/
прогулянка на природі

going round a museum /'gəʊɪŋ raʊnd ə mju:'zi:əm/
відвідування музею

going to an amusement park /'gəʊɪŋ tə ən ə'mju:zmənt pa:k/
відвідування парку розваг

sailing /'seɪlɪŋ/ *вітрильний спорт*

visiting a farm /'vɪzɪtɪŋ ə fa:m/
відвідування ферми

visiting an aquarium /'vɪzɪtɪŋ ən ə'kwɛəriəm/
океанарію

watching a show /wɒtʃɪŋ ə ʃəʊ/
перегляд шоу

SCHOOL COLLOCATIONS

do an exercise /du: ən 'eksəsaɪz/
виконувати вправу

do a project /du: ə 'prɒdʒekt/
працювати над проектом

do a test /du: ə test/
виконувати тест

do homework /du: 'həʊmwɜ:k/
виконувати домашні завдання

fail a test /feɪl ə test/
“провалити” тест

get marks /get mɑ:kz/
отримувати оцінки

give a lesson /gɪv ə 'lesən/
проводити урок/заняття

pass a test /pɑ:s ə test/
успішно скласти тест

study from a textbook /'stʌdi frəm ə 'tekstbʊk/
навчатися за книгою

take notes /teɪk nəʊts/
робити нотатки, занотовувати

UNIT 20

FAMILY

aunt /ɑ:nt/
тітка

beautiful /'bjʊ:tɪfəl/
гарний (-а), красивий (-а)

blonde /blɒnd/
білявий (-а)

cousin /'kʌzən/
двоюрідний брат/двоюрідна сестра

dark /dɑ:k/
темний (-а)

fair /feə/
світлий (-а)

good-looking /,gʊd'lʊkɪŋ/
привабливий (-а), гарний (-а)

grandchild /'grændtʃaɪld/
онук, онука

granddaughter /'grænd,dɔ:tə/
онука

grandfather /'grænd,fɑ:ðə/
дідуся

grandmother /'grænd,mʌðə/
бабуся

grandparent /'grænd,peərənt/
бабуся або дідуся

grandson /'grændsɒn/
онук

nephew /'nefju:/
племінник

niece /ni:s/
племінниця

old /əʊld/
старий (-а), літній (-я)

pretty /'prɪti/
гарненький (-а), вродливий (-а)

short /ʃɔ:t/
низький (-а) на зріст

slim /slɪm/
стрункий (-а)

tall /tɔ:l/
високий (-а) на зріст

uncle /'ʌŋkl/
дядько

young /jʌŋ/
молодий (-а)

ADVERBS OF DEGREE

certainly /'sɜ:tənli/
точно

nearly /'nɪəli/
приблизно

probably /'prɒbəbli/
ймовірно

quite /kwaɪt/
досить

really /'ri:əli/
дійсно

STARTER UNIT

BE

Positive	Negative
I'm (am)	I'm (am) not
you/we/they're (are)	you/we/they aren't (are not)
he/she/it's (is)	he/she/it isn't (is not)
Questions	Short answers
Am I ...?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Are you/we/they ...?	Yes, you/we/they are.
Is he/she/it ...?	No, you/we/they aren't. Yes, he/she/it is. No, he/she/it isn't.

- We use **be** for people and things to describe them, say how old they are and where they are.
*I'm John. I'm tall. I'm 14. I'm in the classroom.
My bag is under my desk. It's blue and white.*

There is / There are

	Singular	Plural
Positive	there's	there are
Negative	there isn't	there aren't
Questions	Is there ...?	Are there ...?
Short answers	Yes, there is. No, there isn't.	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

- We use **there is / there are** to say that something exists (or doesn't exist).
There's a rubber in my pencil case, but there aren't any pencils.
- We use **there is** with singular and uncountable nouns.
Is there a window near your desk? There's water on the table.
- We use **there are** with plural countable nouns.
Are there any pens on the table? Yes, there are.

Practice

- Complete the questions with *Is there* or *Are there*. Then write answers.

0 Are there any shelves in your classroom? (✓)
Yes, there are.

1 _____ a green pencil on the floor? (✓) _____

2 _____ any maps on the walls? (X) _____

3 _____ any cinemas in your town? (✓) _____

HAVE GOT

Positive

I/you/we/they've (have) got
he/she/it's (has) got

Negative

I/you/we/they haven't (have not) got
he/she/it hasn't (has not) got

Questions

Have I/you/we/they got ...?

Has he/she/it got ...?

Short answers

Yes, I/you/we/they have. No, I/you/we/they haven't.

Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn't.

- We use **have got** to talk about our family, our hair or eyes and our possessions.
*I've got a brother. He's got blue eyes.
My sister's got a new phone. It's great!*

Practice

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of **have got**.

0 I've got a new green bike.

1 My friends _____ (X) pets at home.

2 We _____ a new English teacher. (✓)

3 My dad _____ (X) a car. He _____ a bike.

4 _____ you _____ a computer?' 'Yes, I _____.

CAN

Positive	I/you/he/she/it/we/they can
Negative	I/you/he/she/it/we/they can't (cannot)
Questions	Can I/you/he/she/it/we/they ...?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they can . No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they can't .

- We use **can** to talk about ability.
I can play football, but I can't play tennis.

Practice

- 3** Write four sentences about the things you **can** and **can't** do.

I can't speak French, but I can speak English.

PRESENT SIMPLE

Positive	I/You/We/They play volleyball. He/She/It goes running.
Negative	I/You/We/They don't paint pictures. He/She/It doesn't write poems.
Questions	Do I/you/we/they sit near the window? Does he/she/it live near here?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they do . No, I/you/we/they don't . Yes, he/she/it does . No, he/she/it doesn't .

We use the **present simple** to talk about things we do often or every day.

I play football after school every day.

He doesn't go skating in the summer.

UNIT 1 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

- We use the present simple to talk about things we do often or every day.
100% *I **always** play table tennis in the summer.*
*I **usually** go sailing with my dad.*
↑
*I **often** do athletics with my friends.*
↓
*I'm **sometimes** late for school.*
0% *I'm **never** unhappy.*
- We use the present simple with **adverbs of frequency** to say **how often** we do things.
How often do you go snowboarding?
We sometimes go snowboarding in the winter.
- With the verb **be**, we put the adverb after the verb and before the adjective.
Are you sometimes tired after school?
Yes, I'm often tired. / No, I'm not often tired.
- With other verbs in the present simple, we put the adverb before the main verb.
Do you often play hockey at school?
Yes, I often play hockey. / No, I don't often play hockey.
- Remember, we use **never** with positive verbs.
I never go snowboarding. (not I don't never go...)

Practice

- 1** Complete the sentences with the present simple form of the verbs in the box.

go	not go	not play	play
study	watch		

- I _____ basketball in a team.
- My teacher _____ sailing when the weather is bad.
- My brother _____ TV after dinner every day.
- _____ your mum _____ running before work?
- My friends and I _____ rugby at the weekend. We prefer football.
- My best friend always _____ hard before an exam.

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, STARTER, PRESENT SIMPLE PAGE 134

2 Rewrite the sentences with the adverb of frequency in brackets in the correct place.

0 I'm late for school. (always)
I'm always late for school.

1 We play badminton. (never)

2 My dad doesn't go running. (often)

3 My friends and I go cycling. (sometimes)

4 We aren't bored in our sports lesson. (usually)

5 Are you tired in the morning? (often)

3 Put the words in order to make questions. Then write answers that are true for you.

0 play / you / table tennis / how often / do / ?
How often do you play table tennis?

I sometimes play table tennis.

1 you and your friends / go / often / sailing / do / ?

2 you / sometimes / bored / are / at home / ?

3 dinner / how often / cook / you / do / ?

4 your best friend / how often / watch / does / TV / ?

5 sometimes / do / you / go / alone / running / ?

Present continuous

Positive	I'm (am) waking up. You/We/They're (are) getting dressed. He/She/It's (is) eating breakfast.
Negative	I'm (am) not brushing my hair. You/We/They aren't (are not) going to school. (or You/We/They're not going to school.) He/She/It isn't (is not) helping. (or He/She/ It's not helping.)
Questions	Am I eating lunch? Are you/we/they making breakfast? Is he/she/it drinking hot chocolate?
Short answers	Yes, I am. No, I'm not. Yes, you/we/they are. No, you/we/they aren't. (or you/we/they're not.) Yes, he/she/it is. No, he/she/it isn't. (or he/she/it's not.)

SPELLING: -ING FORM

Present continuous

most verbs add <i>-ing</i>	<i>go</i> → <i>going</i> <i>brush</i> → <i>brushing</i> <i>eat</i> → <i>eating</i>
verbs ending in <i>-e</i> : remove <i>-e</i> and add <i>-ing</i>	<i>wake</i> → <i>waking</i> <i>have</i> → <i>having</i>
verbs ending in <i>-ie</i> : change the <i>-ie</i> to <i>-y</i> and add <i>-ing</i>	<i>lie</i> → <i>lying</i>
one-syllable verbs ending in a consonant + a vowel + a consonant (except <i>w</i> , <i>x</i> or <i>y</i>): double the consonant and add <i>-ing</i>	<i>get dressed</i> → <i>getting dressed</i> <i>shop</i> → <i>shopping</i>
two-syllable verbs ending in a stressed vowel + a consonant: double the consonant and add <i>-ing</i>	<i>begin</i> → <i>beginning</i> (<i>but open</i> → <i>opening</i>)
In British English, we double the final <i>l</i> in <i>travel</i> .	<i>travel</i> → <i>travelling</i> (American English: <i>travel</i> → <i>traveling</i>)

We use:

- the **present simple** to talk about things we do often or every day. We often use it with frequency adverbs such as *often*, *usually*, *always* and *never*.
We often eat salad in the summer.
- the **present continuous** to talk about things we're doing now or at the moment. We often use it with words such as *now*, *at the moment* and *today*.
I'm preparing my school bag at the moment.

Practice

1 Write complete sentences in the present continuous.

- 0 My brother / make sandwiches at the moment.
My brother's making sandwiches at the moment.
- 1 We / serve dinner now.
.....
- 2 I / not going to school this morning.
.....
- 3 What / you make?
.....
- 4 My friends / not go cycling at the moment.
.....
- 5 your best friend / sit next to you?
.....

2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 We *never eat* / *'re never eating* dinner at a restaurant.
- 2 I *go* / *'m going* swimming after school every day.
- 3 Shh! My baby brother *sleeps* / *'s sleeping* at the moment.
- 4 What *do you usually have* / *are you usually having* for breakfast?
- 5 *Are you watch* / *watching* TV now? No, *I'm not* / *it isn't*.
- 6 My mum *doesn't work* / *isn't working* today. She's on holiday.
- 7 We *always go* / *are always going* to school by bus.

3 Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

- 1 For breakfast, I often

 2 My friends and I sometimes
 after school.
 3 At the moment, my best friend

- 4 I'm
 and shoes today.
 5 On Friday afternoon, I usually

 6 I now.

UNIT 3 LIKE, DON'T LIKE, HATE, LOVE + -ING

After *like*, *don't like*, *hate* and *love*, we use the *-ing* form.

My sister loves listening to rap.

 I **really love** playing the drums.

↑ I **love** listening to the piano.

↑ I **like** listening to rock music.

↓ I **quite like** playing the guitar.

↓ I **don't like** listening to jazz.

 I **hate** listening to the violin.

- We use *like*, *don't like*, *hate* and *love* to talk about the things we like or don't like doing.

I love playing the piano.

My friends don't like going to concerts.

- We can use *really* to say how much we like, love or hate doing things.

We also can use *quite* with *like*.

I really love listening to music, but I really hate listening to rap.

I quite like playing the keyboard. (not I quite love or I quite hate)

➤ SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 2, SPELLING: *-ING* FORM, PAGE 136

Practice

- 1** Complete the table. Tick (✓) the correct rules and write the *-ing* form of the verbs in the last column.

verb	only add <i>-ing</i>	remove <i>-e</i> and add <i>-ing</i>	double the consonant and add <i>-ing</i>	<i>-ing</i> form
dance		✓		<i>dancing</i>
get up				
have				
make				
open				
play				
shop				
sit				
swim				
watch				

2 Complete the sentences with the *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 My sister really loves _____ (play) the guitar.
- 2 My grandparents like _____ (live) in a big city.
- 3 My dad loves _____ (drive).
- 4 I quite like _____ (go) snowboarding with my family.
- 5 My friends and I hate _____ (wear) a school uniform.
- 6 We don't like _____ (get up) early.

3 Write sentences that are true for you with *like, don't like, hate, love* and the words in brackets.

- 1 (go cycling)
I really love going cycling with my friends.
- 2 (listen to rock music) _____.
- 3 (study for exams) _____.
- 4 (have pizza for dinner) _____.
- 5 (swim in the sea) _____.

UNIT 4 PAST SIMPLE OF BE

Positive	I/He/She/It was at home yesterday. You/We/They were at school at ten o'clock.
Negative	I/He/She/It wasn't (was not) five years old in 2010. You/We/They weren't in the park yesterday.
Questions	Where was I/he/she/it at six o'clock? Who were you/we/they with yesterday? Was I/he/she/it late? Were you/we/they happy?
Short answers	Yes, I/he/she/it was . No, I/he/she/it wasn't (was not) . Yes, you/we/they were . No, you/we/they weren't (were not).

Was/were are the past forms of *be*. We use *was/were* to describe people and things in the past.
My grandmother was tall and she was very beautiful.

The earrings were fantastic. They were round.

We also use *was/were* or *were/weren't* to say where people or things were or weren't in the past.

We weren't at school yesterday. It was a holiday.

The new T-shirt wasn't in her bedroom.

We start sentences with *was/weren't* to make questions.

Was it a good party? Weren't your friends with you?

We can use *was/weren't* in short answers without the noun.

Yes, it was. No, they weren't.

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with *was(n't)* or *were(n't)*.

- 0 I was very surprised.
 1 My friends _____ interested in my new phone.
 2 My dad _____ (not) in the office at 11 o'clock.
 3 We _____ (not) happy. Our dog _____ missing.
 4 You _____ very tired yesterday.
 5 I _____ (not) hungry, but I _____ very thirsty.

2 Put the words in order to make questions. Then write the short answer.

- 0 bored / you / were / ? (✓)
Were you bored? Yes, I was.
 1 your / tall / teacher / was / first / ? (✓)

 2 shoes / were / his / broken / ? (✓)

 3 you / and / friends / your / cold / were / ? (✗)

 4 mobile / bag / was / in / your / your / ? (✗)

 5 lake / were / the / we / near / ? (✓)

3 Write complete questions with *was* or *were*. Then write answers that are true for you.

- 0 Where / you / yesterday / at 6 p.m.
Where were you yesterday at 6 p.m.?
I was at home.
 1 you / late / for school on Monday?

 2 your friends / tired / at 9 a.m. this morning?

 3 When / your best friend / born?

 4 What day / it / yesterday?

 5 this exercise / difficult?

UNIT 5

PAST SIMPLE: REGULAR VERBS

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **climbed** a mountain.
 I/You/He/She/It/We/They **recorded** an album.

- We use the past simple to talk about things that happened in the past.
Leonardo da Vinci painted the Mona Lisa. We visited The Prado Museum in Madrid.
- With regular verbs, the past simple verb ends in *-ed*. (See Spelling below.)
climb → *climbed*, *change* → *changed*,
carry → *carried*

Spelling: regular verbs

most verbs: add <i>-ed</i>	<i>play</i> → <i>played</i>
verbs that end in <i>-e</i> : add <i>-d</i>	<i>change</i> → <i>changed</i>
verbs that end in consonant + <i>-y</i> : change <i>-y</i> to <i>-i</i> and add <i>-ed</i>	<i>carry</i> → <i>carried</i>
one-syllable verbs ending in a consonant + a vowel + a consonant (except <i>w, x</i> or <i>y</i>): double the consonant and add <i>-ed</i>	<i>stop</i> → <i>stopped</i>
two-syllable verbs ending in a stressed vowel + a consonant: double the final consonant and add <i>-ed</i>	<i>prefer</i> → <i>preferred</i>
In British English, we double the final <i>l</i> .	<i>travel</i> → <i>travelled</i> (American English: <i>travel</i> → <i>traveled</i>)

Practice

- 1 Complete the table with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.

cross die enjoy plan
practise shop stay study
try walk

climb →	change →	carry →	play →	stop →
climbed	changed	carried	played	stopped
<i>crossed</i>				

- 2 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.

climb finish listen play
try watch

- My friends football yesterday.
- I TV last night.
- We to music in class.
- My mum a mountain at the weekend.
- My family Chinese food last week.
- I my homework quickly.

UNIT 6

PAST SIMPLE: NEGATIVES AND QUESTIONS

- SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 5, PAST SIMPLE: REGULAR VERBS, PAGE 139

Negative	I/You/He/She/It/We/They didn't (did not) finish.
Questions	Where did I/you/he/she/it/we/they cook ? Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they work in a shop?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they did . No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they didn't .

- We use the **past simple negative** to talk about things that didn't happen in the past.
*The café **didn't open** at eight o'clock.*
*We **didn't watch** a film in class.*
- We use **past simple questions** to ask about things that happened in the past.
*What time **did** he **finish** work?*
***Did** you **listen** to music last night?*
- We use **short answers** to answer simple Yes / No questions.
*Yes, I **did**.*

Practice

- 1 Complete the sentences with the past simple negative form of the underlined verbs.

- My dad played tennis. He didn't play volleyball.
- We cooked fish. We meat.
- In the school holidays, my brother worked in a factory. He in a shop.
- I used my mobile to send a message. I the computer.
- My friends climbed a tree. They a mountain.
- I opened the window. I the door.

- 2 Write true sentences about what you and the people you know didn't do yesterday. Use the words in brackets and the past simple negative form of the verbs.

- (I / watch)
*I **didn't watch** a film on TV yesterday.*
- (my mum / listen)
.....
- (my classmates / walk)
.....
- (I / study)
.....
- (my friends and I / play)
.....
- (this class / start)
.....

3 Write complete questions in the past simple. Then write short answers.

- 0 Did you cook dinner yesterday?
No, I didn't.
- 1 _____ your sister _____ (help) you with your homework?
Yes, _____.
- 2 _____ your friends _____ (finish) all the biscuits?
Yes, _____.
- 3 _____ this class _____ (start) at 10 a.m.?
No, _____.
- 4 _____ you _____ (enjoy) the party?
Yes, _____.
- 5 _____ it _____ (rain) yesterday?
No, _____.

4 Put the words in order to make questions. Then write answers that are true for you.

- 0 you / walk / this / did / school / to / morning / ?
Did you walk to school this morning?
Yes, I did.
- 1 start / what / you / did / time / school / ?
.....
.....
- 2 use / did / a / you / computer / last night / ?
.....
.....
- 3 study / yesterday / you / did / what / ?
.....
.....
- 4 visit / country / holiday / you / did / another / on / ?
.....
.....
- 5 when / you / finish / Unit 5 / did / ?
.....
.....

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 5, PAST SIMPLE: REGULAR VERBS, PAGE 139

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 6, PAST SIMPLE: QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES, PAGE 140

Positive	I/You/He/She/It/We/They swam in the sea every day.
Negative	I/You/He/She/It/We/They didn't go to Italy on holiday.
Questions	What did I/you/he/she/it/we/they eat ? Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they have a good time?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they did . No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they didn't .

- Remember, we use the **past simple** to talk about things that happened or didn't happen in the past.
- With regular verbs, the past simple verb ends in **-ed**.
want → **wanted**, *decide* → **decided**, *travel* → **travelled**
- With irregular verbs, the past simple doesn't end in **-ed**. (See irregular verb list page 158)
buy → **bought**, *come* → **came**, *take* → **took**

Practice

1 Complete the table with the missing words.

Infinitive	Past simple	Infinitive	Past simple
eat	0 <u>ate</u>	arrive	6 _____
1 _____	went	7 _____	carried
ride	2 _____	enjoy	8 _____
3 _____	saw	9 _____	lived
swim	4 _____	stop	10 _____
5 _____	took	11 _____	watched

2 Read the sentences and underline the irregular past simple form of the verbs. Then write the infinitive of the verbs.

0 I swam in the sea every day. *swim*

1 We went sightseeing in the morning.

2 We had a great time on holiday.

3 I rode an elephant in India.

4 My friends ate pizza last night.

5 My parents bought me a present.

3 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.

buy can get up give ride
see

1 Our teacher _____ us a lot of homework.

2 We _____ our bikes to the beach.

3 I _____ a ticket at the station.

4 My dad _____ at six o'clock this morning.

5 I _____ my best friend with her mum.

6 I _____ read and write when I was five.

4 Complete the conversation with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Alice: How ⁰ was (be) your holiday?

Jack: Great! I really ¹ _____ (enjoy) it!

Alice: ² _____ you _____ (go) camping?

Jack: No, we ³ _____ (stay) in a hotel.

Alice: What ⁴ _____ you _____ (do) every day?

Jack: In the morning, we ⁵ _____ (swim) in the sea. The beach ⁶ _____ (be) very near. In the afternoon, we ⁷ _____ (visit) different places.

Alice: Cool! Where ⁸ _____ you _____ (eat)?

Jack: We ⁹ _____ (have) breakfast and dinner in the hotel.

I ¹⁰ _____ (take) a lot of photos.

Alice: Can I see them?

Jack: Yes, of course.

UNIT 8

SOMEONE, ANYONE, ETC.

	Person	Thing	Place
every	everyone	everything	everywhere
some-	someone	something	somewhere
any-	anyone	anything	anywhere
no-	no one	nothing	nowhere

- We normally use **everyone**, **everything**, etc. and **someone**, **something**, etc. in positive sentences.

Everyone is at the party.

There's something to drink on the table.

- We use **anyone**, **anything**, etc. and **no one**, **nothing**, etc. in negative sentences and questions.

I haven't got anywhere to sit.

Is no one in the classroom?

- We use **no one**, **nothing** and **nowhere** in sentences with a positive verb. We use **anyone**, **anything** and **anywhere** in sentences with a negative verb.

- Negative verbs with **anyone**, **anything** etc. mean the same as positive verbs with **no one**, **nothing**, etc.

I haven't got anything to do.

I've got nothing to do.

There isn't anyone at home.

There's no one at home.

- **No one, nothing**, etc. mean **not anyone, not anything**, etc. so we don't use a negative verb with these words.
*I've got **nothing** to drink.*
(~~not I haven't got nothing~~ ...)
*There's **nowhere** to sit. (~~not There isn't nowhere~~ ...)*

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm bored. I haven't got *anyone / anything / anywhere* to do.
- 2 I went to the new shop in the town, but I bought *no one / nothing / nowhere*.
- 3 Do you have *everyone / everything / everywhere* in your bag?
- 4 Are you busy? I'm looking for *someone / something / somewhere* to walk home with me.
- 5 Where are your friends? There's *no one / nothing / nowhere* in the classroom.
- 6 They decided to go *someone / something / somewhere* near a beach for their holiday.

2 Complete the sentences with **every-**, **some-**, **any-** or **no-**.

- 0 Your room's very tidy. There's nothing on the floor.
- 1 I'm leaving because there isn't _____ where for me to sit.
- 2 There isn't _____ one in my class who speaks German.
- 3 _____ one in my school studies English.
- 4 Was there _____ thing good on TV last night?
- 5 My favourite place is _____ where I can play football with my friends.

3 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

anything	anywhere	everyone
no one	nothing	someone
something	somewhere	

- 0 **Anna:** Are you hungry?
Matt: No, I ate something a few minutes ago.

- 1 **Charlie:** What's that noise? I think there's _____ outside the window.
Jon: No, it's the trees. There's _____ there.
- 2 **Lizzie:** Did you go _____ special yesterday?
Martha: Yes, we went _____ near the lake and we had a picnic.
- 3 **Paul:** Are you doing _____, Jack?
Jack: No, _____. Why?
- 4 **Greg:** Have you got drinks for the party?
Alberto: Yes, I bought some cola. _____ likes cola.

UNIT 9

PRONOUNS AND DETERMINERS

	Determiner	Pronoun
I	It's my jumper.	It's mine .
you	It's your cap.	It's yours .
he	It's his jacket.	It's his .
she	It's her swimming costume.	It's hers .
it	It's its shoe.	–
we	They're our clothes.	They're ours .
you	They're your socks.	They're yours .
they	They're their trousers.	They're theirs .

- We use the determiners **my, your, his**, etc. with nouns to talk about our possessions.
*That's **my** tie.*
*Is this **your** scarf?*
- We use the pronouns **mine, yours, his**, etc. so we don't need to repeat the noun.
*Is this your scarf? Yes, it's **mine**.*
(~~not Yes, it's my scarf.~~)
*Are these your trainers? Yes, they're **ours**.*
(~~not Yes, they're our trainers.~~)
- **Mine** is always singular.
*Who do these trainers belong to? They're **mine**.*
(~~not mines~~)
- There is no pronoun form for **its**.

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with the correct determiner

(*my, your, his, etc.*).

- I love watching films. _____ favourite actor is Johnny Depp.
- One of my uncles lives in New York. _____ name is David.
- That isn't my parents' car. _____ car is blue.
- 'Is this Maria's?' 'No, _____ jacket is red.'
- We haven't got a big dog. _____ dog is very small.
- Can I borrow _____ rubber, please? I haven't got one.

2 Choose the correct words.

- You haven't got John's cap. *His / Hers* is black.
- I haven't got a pencil. Can I borrow *mine / yours*?
- Are these your books? No, they aren't *yours / mine*.
They belong to Harry and Nick.
- Ana's looking for her shoes. Are these *hers / theirs*?
- You're wearing Nick's jumper. Where's *his / yours*?
- Shall we buy a new tent? *Ours / Its* is very old.

3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

his mine my our theirs
your yours yours

Steve: I tidied the house this morning. All _____¹ clothes were everywhere. Are these shorts _____²?

Laura: No, they aren't. They're Dan's.

Steve: And these green socks? Are they _____³ too?

Laura: No, they're _____⁴.
The white socks are Dan's.

Steve: Right. I like _____⁵ socks, Laura!

Laura: _____⁶ grandma gave them to me!

Steve: Whose blue jumper is this?

Laura: It's _____⁷! You've got a blue jumper, haven't you!

Steve: You're right! Dan and Lucy have got red trousers. Are these _____⁸?

Laura: Yes, they are.

UNIT 10 SOME, ANY, A LOT OF, A FEW, A BIT OF

	Countable	Uncountable
Questions	Are there any shops near your house?	Have you got any money ?
Positive	There are some shops over there.	There's some money on the table.
Negative	There aren't any large shops near my house.	I haven't got any money in my purse.
a lot of	My sister's got a lot of earrings .	My mum's got a lot of jewellery .
a few / a bit of	There are a few books on the table.	There's a bit of make-up in the bathroom.

- Countable nouns are nouns for things that we can count. We can use *a/an, the* or a number before them and they can be used in both the singular and the plural.
I bought a leather wallet and two caps in the new shop.
- Uncountable nouns are nouns for things that we can't count. We can't use *a/an* or a number before them and we can't use them in the plural.
My cousin bought some jewellery and some make-up. (not a jewellery, a make-up)

Practice

1 Complete the table with the words in the box.

biscuit	cheese	earring	egg
jacket	jewellery	juice	
make-up	milk	money	photo
purse	T-shirt	wallet	

Countable	Uncountable
<i>biscuit</i>	<i>cheese</i>

2 Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

1 I didn't buy a new wallet because I didn't have _____ money.

2 There are _____ new students in my class.

3 Were there _____ blue T-shirts in the shop?

4 Let's go shopping. I want to buy _____ new clothes.

5 That shop hasn't got _____ bread.

6 Did you eat _____ cake on your birthday?

3 Complete the sentences with *a lot of*, *a few* or *a bit of*.

0 Sally's got *a bit of* jewellery but not much.

1 We've got _____ biscuits. There are three packets here and four packets on that shelf.

2 We did well in our test and our teacher only gave us _____ homework – just one exercise.

3 I've got _____ good friends – Anna, Karen and Rachel.

4 We made sandwiches, pizza, a salad and cakes. There was _____ food at my party!

5 The trip is for three days. You only need _____ pairs of socks, not 12 pairs!

4 Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

James: Did you buy ¹*a* / *any* clothes in the sales?

Holly: Yes, I bought ²*any* / *some* sunglasses, ³*a* / *some* baseball cap and ⁴*a few* / *a bit of* make-up.

James: Really! You bought a ⁵*lot* / *few* of things. I only bought ⁶*a* / *some* wallet.

UNIT 11

AS ... AS

When we compare two things:

- we can use **as + adjective + as** to say the things are the same.

*In my school, pizza is **as popular as** burgers. (not *as popular than* ...)*

- we can use **not as + adjective + as** to say two things are different.

*Chocolate cake isn't **as healthy as** fruit salad.*

- The form of the adjective doesn't change with **as + adjective + as**.

*A burger isn't **as big as** a pizza. (not *as bigger as* ...)*

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with *as ... as*.

0 I'm short, but my sister is very short.

I'm not *as short as my sister*

1 The Burger Bar is popular. The Pizza Restaurant is popular too.

The Burger Bar is

2 Ireland is wet. Scotland is wet too.

Ireland is

3 Lemonade is sweet, but cola is really sweet.

Lemonade isn't

4 Your shorts are quite dirty, but your T-shirt is very dirty.

Your shorts aren't

5 My mum's pizza is good. The pizza at Harry's Café is good too.

My mum's pizza is

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

Adjective	Comparative
One syllable	
slow →	slower
Two syllables with consonant + -y	
healthy →	healthier
Two syllables or more	
beautiful →	more beautiful
Irregular	
good →	better
bad →	worse
far →	farther/further

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two things (see *Spelling*).
*Water is usually **cheaper** than cola.*
- We usually use **than** after comparative adjectives.
*Vegetables are **healthier than** biscuits.*

Spelling

- One-syllable adjectives:**
 - mostly add **-er**.
small → smaller, cheap → cheaper
 - One-syllable adjectives ending in **-e**, add **-r**.
nice → nicer, late → later
 - One-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant (except **w, x** or **y**), double the consonant and add **-er**.
big → bigger, fat → fatter
- Two-syllable adjectives** ending in consonant + **-y** change the **-y** to **-i** and add **-er**.
busy → busier, happy → happier
- Two or more syllables** add **more**.
expensive → more expensive

Practice

2 Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- My maths teacher is (young) than my geography teacher.
- I think playing football is (interesting) than watching it.
- Exercise 2 is (easy) than Exercise 3.
- My house is (far) from school than yours.
- A mango is (big) than a strawberry.

3 Write complete sentences. Use the comparative form of the adjectives in the box.

expensive fast good hot

- The blue T-shirt is £10. The red T-shirt is £15.
The red T-shirt is *more expensive than the blue T-shirt*.
- It's 2 hours by train. It's 2 hours 45 minutes by bus.
The train is
- It's 25°C in London today. It's 33°C in Istanbul.
Istanbul is
- The pizza wasn't bad. The burger was very bad.
The pizza was

UNIT 12 SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 11, COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES, PAGE 145

Adjective	Superlative
One syllable	
young →	the youngest
Two syllables with consonant + -y	
heavy →	the heaviest
Two syllables or more	
famous →	the most famous
Irregular	
good →	the best
bad →	the worst
far →	the farthest / furthest

- We use superlative adjectives to compare one thing with two or more other things.
*The Hopper computer is one of **the fastest** in the world.*
- We use **the** before the superlative adjective.
*This is **the smallest** smartphone anywhere in the world.*
- We usually use **in** to talk about a place with the superlative adjective.
*This is **the most expensive** laptop in the world / in my city / in my town, etc. (not of the world)*

Spelling

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 11, COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES, SPELLING, PAGE 146

The spelling rules for superlative and comparative adjectives are the same.

- One-syllable adjectives:**
 - mostly add *-est*.
small → smallest, cheap → cheapest
 - One-syllable adjectives ending in *-e*, add *-st*.
nice → nicest, late → latest

- One-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant (except *w, x* or *y*), double the consonant and add *-est*.
big → biggest, fat → fattest
- Two-syllable adjectives** ending in consonant + *-y* change the *-y* to *-i* and add *-est*.
busy → busiest, happy → happiest
- Adjectives of two or more syllables** add **most**.
expensive → most expensive

Practice

1 Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives.

0 slow *slower, the slowest*

1 near 4 friendly 7 good

2 large 5 happy 8 bad

3 thin 6 beautiful 9 far

2 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1 My sister's got (long) hair in my school.

2 Cristiano Ronaldo is one of (famous) football players in the world.

3 You can eat (good) burgers in my town in Ray's Burger Bar.

4 Mrs Peters is (friendly) teacher in my school.

5 My house has got (big) garden in my street.

6 Last night we watched (funny) video online. I laughed a lot!

3 Write sentences using superlative adjectives.

0 The supermarket / busy shop / my town
*The supermarket is **the busiest** shop in my town.*

1 My sister / fast person / our school
.....

2 The Dnipro / long river / in Ukraine
.....

3 Salad / healthy food / this café
.....

4 I / bad singer / my class
.....

5 My brother / good player / his team
.....

4 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I think history is *more* / *the most* interesting than science.
- 2 Travelling by plane is *faster* / *the fastest* than travelling by bus.
- 3 Oranges are *healthier* / *the healthiest* food in the cupboard.
- 4 Jonny bought *better* / *the best* smartphone in the shop.
- 5 A printer is *more* / *the most* expensive than a mouse.
- 6 The Torre de Cristal is *taller* / *the tallest* building in Spain.

UNIT 13 SHOULD / SHOULDN'T

Positive

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **should go** to bed earlier.

Negative

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **shouldn't (should not) play** tennis.

Questions

What **should** I/you/he/she/it/we/they **do**?
Should I/you/he/she/it/we/they stop doing sports?

Short answer

Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they **should**.
 No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they **shouldn't**.

- We use **should** and **shouldn't** to give advice.
*I've got a headache. You **should call** the doctor.*
*You **shouldn't listen** to loud music.*
- We use **should** to say something is a **good idea**.
*My hand hurts. You **should go** to the doctor.*
- We use **shouldn't** to say something is a **bad idea**.
*I feel sick. You **shouldn't eat** anything.*

- After **should** and **shouldn't**, we use the infinitive of the verb without **to**.

*My leg hurts. You **should rest** and you **shouldn't walk**. (not *you should to rest ... you shouldn't to walk*)*

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with **should** or **shouldn't**.

- 1 John's got a temperature. He go to school.
- 2 I hurt my foot. The doctor says I play football for three weeks.
- 3 My best friend didn't pass the exam. His teacher thinks he study harder.
- 4 Did you say your back hurts? You go swimming. It's very good for you.
- 5 My sister lost her smartphone yesterday. I think she talk to the police.
- 6 To enter a race, you do exercise the day before the race.

2 Write complete sentences with **should** or **shouldn't** and the words in the box.

do sport and exercise
 drink a lot of cola and lemonade
 eat a lot of sweets and chocolate
 eat healthy food
 sleep well
 watch a lot of TV

If you want to keep fit and healthy, ...

- 0 *you should do sport and exercise.*
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

3 Write complete questions with *should*. Then write short answers.

0 I / do the race? (✓)

Should I do the race?

Yes, you should.

1 my brother / buy a fast car? (✗)

2 my friends / go to bed earlier? (✓)

3 we / have a party? (✗)

4 I / stay at home? (✗)

4 Read the examples and write some advice with *should* or *shouldn't*.

0 I don't feel well. What should I do?

You should go to bed and lie down.

1 It's my mum's birthday next week. What should I buy her?

2 I've got an exam tomorrow. Should I study all night?

3 I want to visit another country. Where should I go?

4 My brother wants to do a new sport. Which one should he do?

5 I want to make some new friends. Should I join a club?

UNIT 14 PREPOSITIONS

We can use **prepositions** to say where things are.

A river goes **through** the town.

Three bridges go **across** the river.

The post office is **next to** the train station.

The train station is **beside** the post office.

The car park is **in front of** the supermarket.

The petrol station is **opposite** the library.

The restaurant is **near** the train station.

The hospital is **outside** the town.



Practice

1 Look at the map of the town. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- The swimming pool is *near* / *across* the bus station.
- To get to the train station, walk *across* / *through* the bridge.
- The university is *opposite* / *next to* the library.
- The petrol station is *beside* / *near* the university.
- The cinema is *opposite* / *next to* the river.
- There's a car park *in front of* / *through* the supermarket.

2 Look at the map again and complete the sentences with the words in the box. Use each word once only.

across near next to opposite
outside through

- A river goes through the town.
- _____ the town, there's a hospital.
- Drive _____ the bridge and there's a cinema on your left.
- There's a roundabout _____ the middle bridge.
- The park is _____ the police station.
- The market is _____ the hotel.

3 Read the questions and write true sentences about your town.

- Where's your school?
It's near my house, opposite the park.
- Is the hospital outside your town?
.....
- What's your favourite shop? Where is it?
.....
- Does a river go through your town?
.....

4 How often do you walk across a bridge?
.....

5 Is there a museum in your town? Where is it?
.....

UNIT 15 PAST CONTINUOUS

Positive	I/He/She/It was eating dinner. You/We/They were playing football.
Negative	I/He/She/It wasn't (was not) sleeping . You/We/They weren't (were not) helping .
Questions	What was I/he/she/it doing at 8 a.m.? What were you/we/they watching on TV? Was I/he/she/it playing computer games? Were you/we/they listening to music?
Short answers	Yes, I/he/she/it was . No, he/she/it wasn't . Yes, you/we/they were . No, you/we/they weren't .

We use the **past continuous** to talk about activities happening at a moment in the past.
I was watching TV, my parents were working and my brother was playing football yesterday afternoon.

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 2, SPELLING: **-ING FORM, PAGE 136**

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 At 6 p.m., I *was doing* / *were doing* my homework.
- 2 My dad *was cooking* / *were cooking* our dinner.
- 3 Yesterday afternoon, we *wasn't playing* / *weren't playing* tennis.
- 4 Yesterday afternoon, you *wasn't wearing* / *weren't wearing* your new cap.
- 5 My friends *wasn't having* / *weren't having* lunch at 1 p.m.
- 6 We *was climbing* / *were climbing* a tree on Saturday morning.

2 Complete the paragraph with the past continuous form of the verbs in the box.

cry	listen	make	not sleep	
not watch	rain	read	sit	surf

This morning, my dad ⁰*was making* breakfast. The baby was hungry and he ¹..... My big sister was in her bedroom. She ².....; she ³..... a magazine. My mum and my older brother ⁴..... the internet. My little sister ⁵..... in her favourite chair, but she ⁶..... TV. My younger brother ⁷..... to loud music. There were clouds in the sky and it ⁸..... I decided to stay at home.

3 Write complete questions in the past continuous. Then write short answers.

At 10 a.m. yesterday,

0 it / snow? (X)

Was it snowing?

No it wasn't.

1 your friends / ride their bikes? (✓)

2 you / shop with your friends? (✓)

3 your mum / work? (X)

4 I / have a shower? (X)

5 you and your friends / swim in the lake? (✓)

4 Put the words in order to make questions. Then write answers that are true for you.

0 yesterday at 11 a.m. / you / were / sleeping / ?

Were you sleeping yesterday at 11 a.m.?

No, I wasn't. I was studying at school.

1 were / doing / you / at 8 a.m. this morning / what / ?

2 blue socks / you / were / wearing / yesterday / ?

3 after school yesterday / watching / a film / were / you and your friends / ?

4 raining / was / it / yesterday evening / ?

5 on Saturday morning / what / your friends / doing / were / ?

UNIT 16

PAST SIMPLE AND PAST CONTINUOUS

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNITS 5–7, PAST SIMPLE, PAGES 139–142

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 15, PAST CONTINUOUS, PAGE 150

- We use the **past continuous** to describe activities happening at a particular moment in the past. Sometimes these activities happen at the same time. We don't use the past continuous to talk about the beginning or the end of an activity.

John was looking at the elephants and his sister was buying an ice cream.

- We use the **past simple** when one complete action follows another.

I woke up and I went downstairs.

- We often use the **past simple** and **past continuous** together to say that one action interrupts another.

A elephant was eating some fruit when the boy fell.

when and while

We use **when** and **while** to connect two activities. When we use the **past simple** and **past continuous** together, we often use:

- when** before the past simple.

The boy was looking at the elephants when he fell.

Or

When the boy fell, he was looking at the elephants.

- while** before the past continuous.

The boy fell while he was looking at the elephants.

Or

While the boy was looking at the elephants, he fell.

Practice

- 1** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- When the teacher *came / was coming* into the classroom, we *played / were playing* cards.
- She *didn't call / wasn't calling* me when she *heard / was hearing* a strange noise.
- While I *got off / was getting off* the bus, it *started / was starting* to rain.
- John *arrived / was arriving* while my sister *made / was making* breakfast.
- My brother *climb / was climbing* a tree when he *fell / was falling*.
- I *didn't meet / wasn't meeting* my teacher while we *shopped / were shopping*.

- 2** Complete the sentences with **when** or **while**.

- I was giving food to my rabbit you phoned me.
- We found some money we were playing football outside.
- I wasn't doing anything you turned on the light.
- you sent me the message, I was doing an exam.
- My mum was watching the monkeys someone stole her purse.
- my friends were snowboarding, they saw a famous musician.

- 3** Complete the sentences with one verb in the past simple and one verb in the past continuous.

- My teacher (travel) by boat when she (feel) sick.
- When the music (start), I (not talk) to my friends.
- While I (carry) the plates, I (fall).
- We (run) in the park when we (see) some ducks.

- 5 While I _____ (do) my homework, my phone _____ (ring).
- 6 We _____ (not visit) the British Museum while we _____ (stay) in London.

4 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Use the past simple or the past continuous.

- 0 When I woke up yesterday, *it was raining.*
- 1 When I got to school, my friends _____
- 2 The teacher came into the classroom while _____
- 3 When I arrived home, I _____
- 4 While I was doing my homework, _____

UNIT 17 FUTURE WITH GOING TO

- We form the *going to* future with **be + going to + infinitive without to.**

Positive	I'm (am) going to phone our friends. You/We/They're (are) going to invite all our family. He/She/It's (is) going to watch the animals.
Negative	I'm (am) not going to do any homework. You/We/They aren't (are not) going to buy pizza. He/She/It isn't (is not) going to win the prize.
Questions	Who am I going to see ? What are you/we/they going to do later? Where is he/she/it going to go ? Am I going to have fun? Are you/we/they going to phone me later? Is he/she/it going to tell Mum and Dad?
Short answers	Yes, I am . No, I'm not . Yes, you/we/they are . No, you/we/they aren't . Yes, he/she/it is . No, he/she/it isn't .

- We use the **going to future** to talk about our future plans.
I'm going to watch the concert this evening.
We aren't going to study next weekend.
- We usually make our future plans before we use the '**going to**' future.
Where are you going to go next summer?
Mum bought the tickets last week. We're going to visit Paris and Berlin.

- We often use future time phrases like *this evening, tomorrow morning, next summer, when I'm 18*, etc. with the *going to* future.
I'm going to travel when I'm 18.
My dad isn't going to drive us to school tomorrow morning.

Practice

1 Write complete sentences with the *going to* future form of the verbs.

0 I / buy / new trainers.

I'm going to buy new trainers.

1 We / not ride / our bikes to school tomorrow.

.....

2 My friends / watch / the talent show on TV.

.....

3 My mum / not play / tennis later.

.....

4 My dad / make / pizza.

.....

5 My cousins / not visit / us next weekend.

.....

2 Complete the paragraph with the *going to* future form of the verbs in the box.

buy	fly	not go	not serve	stay
travel	watch	work		

Next summer, I ⁰*m going to fly* to Canada with my family. We ¹..... with our friends. I ²..... a football shirt for my friend Jack because he likes sport. We ³..... a football match with him. I love travelling. When I'm 18, I ⁴..... to university. I ⁵..... around the world. I ⁶..... in a shop in different countries but I ⁷..... food in a restaurant. That's hard work!

3 Complete the questions with the *going to* future form of the verbs in brackets.

1 What you and your friends (watch) on TV after school today?

2 What you (wear) tomorrow?

3 your mum (work) next Saturday?

4 Who you and your family (see) at the weekend?

5 your friends (travel) to another country next summer?

6 you (study) in another town when you're 18?

4 Write true answers to the questions in Ex. 3.

0 *We're going to ride our bikes*

1

2

3

4

5

UNIT 18 MAKING SUGGESTIONS

- A **suggestion** is a plan or an idea that you want someone to think about.
Why don't we go to the concert?
Shall we meet outside the cinema?
Why not ask your mum to drive us?
Let's go to a restaurant later.
- After **Why don't we ...**, **Shall we ...**, **Why not ...** and **Let's ...**, we use an infinitive without *to*.
Shall we make a cake? (not Shall we to make...)
Why don't we buy some lemonade? (not Why don't we to buy...)
- Why don't we ...**, **Shall we ...** and **Why not ...** are questions so we use a question mark (?).
Shall we meet at 8 p.m.?
Why not go by bus?

- **Let's ...** is a sentence so we use a full stop (.).
Let's go to the football match.
- When someone makes a suggestion, we often use words and phrases like **Cool!, Sounds good!, You're right!, Good one!** and **Excellent idea!** to answer.
Let's go swimming. Cool!

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the suggestions.

- 1 Let's *use / to use* that computer over there.
- 2 *Shall we / We shall* include some cartoons in the magazine?
- 3 *Let's / Why not* ask our teacher to help.
- 4 *Why not / Shall we* play hockey?
- 5 *Let's / Why not* write down our ideas first?
- 6 *Why don't we / Why we don't* put a notice on the website?

2 Write suggestions using *Shall ... , Why don't we / Why not ...* or *Let's ...* and the words in the box.

have ~~listen~~ read ride take
watch

0 *Why not listen* to music?

- 1 the film on TV.
- 2 we pizza for dinner?
- 3 our bikes to school tomorrow?
- 4 the book before we see the film.
- 5 we some photos in the museum?

3 Read the sentences, then write a suggestion using *Shall ... , Why don't we / Why not ...* or *Let's ...*

- 1 It's my birthday tomorrow.
.....
- 2 We haven't got any homework to do today.
.....
- 3 The school holidays start next week.
.....
- 4 I'm bored and it's raining.
.....

- 5 I'm hungry and there isn't anything to eat.
.....
- 6 We have to do something for the school magazine.
.....

UNIT 19 HAVE TO / DON'T HAVE TO

Positive	I/You/We/They have to get up early. He/She/It has to eat later.
Negative	I/You/We/They don't have to go climbing. He/She/It doesn't have to wear a uniform.
Questions	What do I/you/we/they have to do now? What time does he/she/it have to get up? Do I/you/we/they have to bring snacks? Does he/she/it have to wear nice clothes?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they do . No, I/you/we/they don't . Yes, he/she/it does . No, he/she/it doesn't .

- We use **have to** to say something is necessary.
*I can't go out. I **have to** help my mum.*
*We **have to be** at school at 8 a.m. for the school trip.*
- We use **don't have to** to say something is not necessary.
*It's Saturday. You **don't have to** get up early.* (But you can if you want.)
*My cousins **don't have to** wear a uniform at their school.*
have to means you have no choice. You can't say 'no'!
don't have to means you can do something if you want.

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 You *have to get fit* / *has to get fit* to enter a race.
- 2 My school is opposite my house. I *don't have to go* / *doesn't have to go* by bus.
- 3 We *have to leave* / *has to leave* our phones at home.
- 4 You *have to wear* / *has to wear* trainers for a nature walk.
- 5 My dad *don't have to wear* / *doesn't have to wear* a suit at work.
- 6 You *don't have to make* / *doesn't have to make* breakfast. I can do it.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have to* and the verbs in the box.

do	not bring	not buy	not help
stay	tidy		

- 0 Every morning, I have to tidy my bedroom.
- 1 You _____ any milk. There's a lot in the fridge.
 - 2 My friends are lucky. They _____ at home.
 - 3 We _____ a vocabulary test every week at school.
 - 4 My brother is ill. He _____ in bed today.
 - 5 You _____ anything on the school trip. I've got a lot of food and drink.

3 Write complete questions with *have to*. Then write short answers.

- 0 you / study hard at your school? (✓)
Do you have to study hard at your school?
Yes I do.
- 1 your mum / work five days a week at the museum? (X)
-
-

- 2 you / turn off your smartphone at school? (✓)
-
-

- 3 your dad / travel for his work? (X)
-
-

- 4 we / do Exercise 5? (X)
-
-

- 5 your friends / make their beds? (✓)
-
-

4 Complete the questions with the correct form of *have to* and the verbs in brackets. Then write answers that are true for you.

- 0 Do you have to go (go) to bed early on Saturday night?
No I don't.
- 1 What time _____ you _____ (get up) on a school day?

- 2 _____ you _____ (speak) English in your English class?

- 3 How much homework _____ you and your classmates _____ (do) every day?

- 4 What _____ you _____ (do) if you miss a class?

- 5 _____ you _____ (buy) a ticket before you get on a bus in your town?

UNIT 20 ADVERBS OF MANNER

- We use **adverbs of manner** to say **how** we do something.

*You have to speak **quietly** here.*

*My sister can play the piano **beautifully**.*

- We make many adverbs of manner by adding **-ly** to the adjective (see Spelling below).

*My little brother is **noisy**. He does everything **noisily**.*

*I'm very **careful**. I always do my homework **carefully**.*

- There are some irregular adverbs.
good → well, fast → fast, hard → hard

Spelling: adverbs of manner

Most adverbs add -ly to the adjective.	<i>quick → quickly</i>
For adjectives ending in -l , we double the l and add -y in the adverb form.	<i>beautiful → beautifully</i>
For adjectives ending in a consonant + -y , we remove the -y and add -ily .	<i>easy → easily</i>

Practice

1 Write the adverb form of the adjectives.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 0 slow | <u>slowly</u> |
| 1 careful | ..... |
| 2 good | ..... |
| 3 happy | ..... |
| 4 quiet | ..... |
| 5 wonderful | ..... |
| 6 heavy | ..... |
| 7 hard | ..... |
| 8 bad | ..... |
| 9 angry | ..... |
| 10 fast | ..... |
| 11 noisy | ..... |

2 Complete the sentences with the adverb form of the adjectives in the box. Use each word once only.

bad	careful	good	hard	loud
quick				

- I can't hear you. The band is playing very loudly.
- If you want to pass the exam, you have to study
- My brother won the race because he ran very
- Please don't ask me to draw a picture. I draw
- Listen! I'm going to repeat these instructions.
- Let's have dinner at your house. Your dad cooks really

3 Complete the questions with the adverb form of the adjectives in brackets. Then write answers that are true for you.

- Which famous musicians sing beautifully (beautiful)?
I think Taylor Swift sings beautifully.
- How many languages can you speak (good)?
- How often do you do your homework (slow) and (careful)?
- Do you eat (quick)?
- How far is your school from your house? Can you walk there (easy)?
- Do you play in a sports team? Does it play (bad) or (good)?

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive Past simple

be	was, were
become	became
begin	began
break	broke
bring	brought
build	built
burn	burned/burnt
buy	bought
catch	caught
choose	chose
come	came
cost	cost
cut	cut
do	did
draw	drew
dream	dreamed/ dreamt
drink	drank
drive	drove
eat	ate
fall	fell
feel	felt
find	found
fly	flew
forget	forgot
get	got
give	gave
go	went
grow	grew
have	had
hear	heard
hit	hit
hold	held
hurt	hurt
keep	kept
know	knew
learn	learned/ learnt

Infinitive Past simple

leave	left
lend	lent
lie	lay
lose	lost
make	made
mean	meant
meet	met
pay	paid
put	put
read	read
ride	rode
ring	rang
run	ran
say	said
see	saw
sell	sold
send	sent
show	showed
shut	shut
sing	sang
sit	sat
sleep	slept
speak	spoke
spell	spelled/spelt
spend	spent
stand	stood
steal	stole
swim	swam
take	took
teach	taught
tell	told
think	thought
throw	threw
understand	understood
wake	woke
wear	wore
win	won
write	wrote

Acknowledgements

The authors would like to thank all the editors who worked on the project for their hard work.

The authors and publishers are grateful to the following for reviewing the material during the writing process:

Argentina: Diana Ogando; Italy: Clare Beddows; Mexico: Neil Crawford; Spain: Michael Epps, Estefanía Avilés; Turkey: Arzu Arslan

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: U = Unit, LS = Life Skills, SU= Starter Unit, C = Culture, R= Review, EA = Extra Activities

Text

C1: IPC for the text about International Paralympic Committee (IPC), www.paralympic.org. Copyright © IPC. Reproduced with kind permission of International Paralympic Committee (IPC); **U6:** Daniel Seddiqui for the adapted text from 'Living the Map, 50 jobs in 50 States'. Copyright © www.livingthemap.com. Reproduced with permission; **U10:** Mr. Cory for the text about Mr. Cory's Cookies website, www.mrcoryscookies.com/about_us. Copyright © Mr. Cory. Reproduced with kind permission of Lisa Howard; Bella Tipping for the text about Bella Tipping. Copyright © Bella Tipping. Reproduced with permission of Bernadette Tipping; **LS4:** Mikaila Ulmer for the text about Mikaila Ulmer. Copyright © Mikaila Ulmer. Reproduced with kind permission of D'Andra Ulmer.

Photography

The following images are sourced from Getty Images.

SU: aldomurillo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; scanrail/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U1:** SolStock/E+; Martin Ruegner/Photodisc; Matt Roberts/Getty Images Sport; Victor Fraile/Getty Images Sport; Jules Frazier/Photodisc; MileA/iStock/Getty Images Plus; bjeayes/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Luhuanfeng/iStock/Getty Images Plus; WesAbrams/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U2:** KatarzynaBialasiewicz/iStock/Getty Images Plus; DeanDrobot/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Elvinagraph/iStock/Getty Images Plus; DeanDrobot/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Elvinagraph/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Sirinapa Wannapat/EyeEm; imagewerks; kupicoo/E+; Tadej Trstenjak/EyeEm; eclipse_images/E+; Purestock; fizkes/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Tetra Images; Maskot; Sung Yoon Jo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; The Catcher Photography/Moment Open; Russell Monk/Stone; Image Source; nemchinowa/iStock/Getty Images Plus; AlexSava/E+; anna1311/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Sveta615/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Maren Caruso/Photodisc; Wuka/E+; Photographer Nick Measures/MomentLjupco/iStock/Getty Images Plus; kaanates/iStock/Getty Images Plus; chengyuzheng/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Qpicimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; nortongo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; rozmarina/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Science Photo Library; subjug/iStock/Getty Images Plus; popovaphoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; chictype/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Ute Grabowsky/Photothek; JGI/Jamie Grill/Blend Images; Tetra Images; Maskot; zirconicusso/iStock/Getty Images Plus; ozgurdonmaz/iStock/Getty Images Plus; 10255185_880/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Raphael Dias/Getty Images Sport; Jamie McDonald/Getty Images Sport; kimberlywood/DigitalVision Vectors; **U3:** Francesco Prandoni/Archivio Francesco Prandoni/Mondadori Portfolio; Artyom Geodakyan/TASS; Photodisc/Stockbyte; Jack Vartoogian/Archive Photos; Jim Chapin/AFP; PeopleImages/DigitalVision; albert mollon/Moment; Dave Simpson/WireImage; Kevin Mazur/WireImage; Robert Daly/OJO Images; Marie-Reine Matterna/Photononstop; **U4:** Robert Daly/Caiaimage; Maurizio Borsari; Joe McBride/The Image Bank; Jutta Klee/The Image Ban; Images Bazaar; Echo/Juice Images; Pingebat/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Peathegee Inc/Blend Images; Gary Parravani/Total 911 Magazine/Future; AlenaPaulus/E+; PJPhoto69/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Mordolff/E+; calvindexter/DigitalVision Vectors; **LS1:**

PeopleImages/E+; Maskot; JGI/Jamie Grill/Blend Images; alexs/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **R1:** NosUA/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Stockbyte; Roger T. Schmidt/Photographer's Choice; Jules Frazier/Photodisc; Roman Samokhin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; maxoidos/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Stefanie Grewel/Cultura; BG017/Bauer-Griffin/GC Images; RubberBall Productions/Brand X Pictures; BpeFoto/Boldrini/ActionPlus/Corbis; WesAbrams/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U5:** Lipnitzki/Roger Viollet; Gilles Petard/Redferns; Apic/RETIRED/Hulton Archive; Bettmann; Sovfoto/Universal Images Group; John van Hasselt/Corbis Historical; Bettmann; Underwood Archives/Archive Photos; Tom Dulat/Getty Images Sport; Dan Kitwood/Getty Images Entertainment; Tetra Images; johnkellerman/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Imagno/Hulton Fine Art Collection; Print Collector/Hulton Archive; Steven Errico/DigitalVision; **U6:** Petek ARICI/E+; Jetta Productions/Dana Neely; Mikael Vaisanen/Corbis; Dougal Waters/DigitalVision; DreamPictures/Blend Images; Jetta Productions/Blend Images; Bob Thomas/The Image Bank; Klaus Vedfelt/Taxi; nimis69/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Dougal Waters/DigitalVision; Jetta Productions/Blend Images; Artsiom/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Westend61; Cliquelimages/The Image Bank; Indeed; sturti/E+; **C2:** Tagstock1/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Image Source/DigitalVision; Kiatanan Sugsompian/Moment; mikespics/iStock/Getty Images Plus; zTONY/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Tony Hutchings/Photographer's Choice; **U7:** gbh007/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Symphonie Ltd/Cultura; Hervé Bois/EyeEm; Steve Smith/Blend Images; bjdLxz/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Image Source; Stuart Black/robertharding; Johnner Images; asiseeit/E+; Massimo Borchi/Atlantide Phototravel/Photolibrary; Frederic J. Brown/AFP; Justin Tallis/AFP; Mark Leary/Taxi; Bet_Noire/iStock/Getty Images Plus; adventtr/E+; fotog; mladn61/E+; Tom Paiva Photography/Blend Images; Dan Callister/Newsmakers/Hulton Archive; Greg Kelner/EyeEm; Nalinratana Phiyalaninmat/EyeEm; Take A Pix Media/Blend Images; Charles Bowman/Photolibrary; Tim Hall/Photodisc; calvindexter/DigitalVision Vectors; powerofforever/iStock/Getty Images Plus; silkwayrain/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Maremagnum/Photolibrary; sharply_done/E+; LifeJourneys/E+; tupungato/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; **U8:** Hero Images; Stockbyte; Yastrebinsky/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Elenathewise/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Firmafotografen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; MiguelMalo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; rzelich/iStock/Getty Images Plus; mactrunk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Serg_Velusceac/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Matthew Ward/Dorling Kindersley; Juha Lehto/EyeEm; drbimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Oleh_Slobodeniuk/E+; Image Source/Photodisc; Shestock/Blend Images; Andersen Ross/Blend Images; Juanmonino/iStock/Getty Images Plus; lubilub/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Emmanuel Faure/DigitalVision; Michael Blau/EyeEm; Christian Nittinger/EyeEm; **LS2:** bubaone/DigitalVision Vectors; Fernando Trabanco Fotografía/Moment; Evgenii_Bobrov/iStock/Getty Images Plus; JakeOlimb/DigitalVision Vectors; didecs/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Michael Wildsmith/Photographer's Choice; George Doyle/Stockbyte; EugeneTomeev/iStock/Getty Images Plus; ML Harris/Photographer's Choice; drflet/E+; sirastock/iStock/Getty Images Plus; RyersonClark/E+; Westend61; TadejZupancic/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Peter Muller/The Image Bank; **U9:** Anastasia Archipova-Lineva/EyeEm; Mika Mika/Moment; Luca Carrotu/EyeEm; Radionphoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Photobalance/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Antagain/iStock/Getty Images Plus; subjug/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Christopher Murray/EyeEm; Shana Novak/DigitalVision; Stockbyte; Dorling Kindersley; Michael Burrell/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Westend61; Plume Creative/DigitalVision; Patrick Ryan/Stone; Robin Marchant/Getty Images Entertainment; Sajjad Hussain/AFP; Eye Ubiquitous/Universal Images Group; Skobrik/Moment; Pranee Chaiyadama/EyeEm; John Thurm/EyeEm; Narin Chantham/EyeEm; jacus/iStock/Getty Images Plus; imagestock/E+; Richard Boll/Photographer's Choice; Yasser Chalid/Moment; Juanmonino/E+; gbh007/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U10:** Westend61; Adam Gault/OJO Images; DNY59/E+; KaraGrubis/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Derek Croucher/Photographer's Choice; Ian Melding/EyeE; fotostorm/E+; PhotoAlto/Michele Constantini/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections; Laurie Noble/The Image Bank; Image Source; Bloom; Productions/DigitalVision; Image Source/Photodisc; JackF/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Kevin C Moore/Cultura; Paolo Paradiso/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Mauro Rota/EyeEm; Glowimages; Tetra Images; Jon Boyes/Photographer's Choice RF; **C3:** Kim Steele/

Photodisc; Oxana Denezhkina/Moment Open; Juanmonino/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; Juanmonino/E+; clubfoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Matilde Gattoni/arabianEye; Indeed; **U11**: laperla_foto/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; rez-art/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Foodcollection RF; Daniel Gril; dlerick/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Tetra Images; gbh007/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Westend61; Tetra Images; from_my_point_of_view/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Lew Robertson/ Photolibary; Hsu Shu Ting/EyeEm; karandaev/iStock/Getty Images Plus; kazoka30/iStock/Getty Images Plus; pagadesign/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Rob Lewine; Maica/E+; gawrav/E+; Torsakarin/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; Tigre M/EyeEm; dkaranouh/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p_saranya/iStock/Getty Images Plus; danielvfung/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Natikka/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Ratchada Prakobdee/ EyeEm; Brian Stablyk/Photographer's Choice; Pinghung Chen/ EyeEm; simona flamigni/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Diego Lezama/ Lonely Planet Images; Education Images/Universal Images Group; Prakash Singh/AFP; batuhan toker/iStock/Getty Images Plus; goroken/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; iuliiia_n/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Michal Fludra/NurPhoto; **U12**: minhee park/iStock/Getty Images Plus; vetkit/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; Popartic/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Image Source; Daniel Sambras/EyeEm; amnachphoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Liam Bailey/Photographer's Choice; ET-ARTWORKS/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; hocus-focus/iStock Unrelease; luismmolina/E+; jpgfactory/iStock/Getty Images Plus; AleksVF/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Denisfilm/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Louisa Gouliamaki/AFP; PHOTOS.com/Getty Images Plus; Ann Ronan Pictures/Print Collector/ Hulton Archive; Science & Society Picture Library; Westend61; **R3**: filborg/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Ben-Schonewille/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U13**: Fuse/Corbis; Ranta Images/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Tetra Images; Fgorgun/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Manuel-F-O/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; Daisy-Daisy/iStock/Getty Images Plus; GoodLifeStudio/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Peter Dazeley/ Photographer's Choice; Lucidio Studio Inc./Corbis; Scie alexsncn Photo Library; Echo/Juice Images; Pierre Verdy/AFP; Leon Neal/AFP; Jeff J Mitchell/Getty Images News; Yellow Dog Productions/The Image Bank; **U14**: Warwick Kent/Photolibary; John Hamilton/EyeEm; AlbertPego/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; **C4**: Jaume Bagés Ribera/EyeEm; claudiodivizia/iStock/Getty Images Plus; airn/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; BarrySeward/E+; Billy Currie Photography/Moment Open; zeljkosantrac/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U15**: Edwin Remsberg/ The Image Bank; VisitBritain/Lee Beel; Westend61; Melanie Hobson/ EyeEm; ColobusYeti/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Lucinda Lee/EyeEm; Walter Bibikow/Photolibary; Martin Harvey/Corbis Documentary; kim McFadden/FOAP; RaptTV/Corbis Documentary; Yury Taranik/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; Killed Photo; Topical Press Agency/Hulton Archive; Matt84/E+; PeterHermesFurian/iStock/Getty Images Plus; flavijus/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; Peter Muller/Cultura; stephanie phillips/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U16**: Arnaud Lesne/EyeEm; Dan Kitwood/ Getty Images News; Alfred Schauhuber/imageBROKER; Szabo Ervin-Edward/EyeEm; Pal Teravagimov Photography/Moment; Riccardo Cioli/EyeEm; Vicki Jauron, Babylon and Beyond Photography/Moment; Thomas Kitchin & Victoria Hurst/First Light; David C Stephens/Moment; Alexander W Helin/Moment; EddieHernandezPhotography/iStock/Getty Images Plus; hfrankWI/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; Geraldine Wilkins/Los Angeles Times; Markus Altmann/Corbis; Vincenzo Pinto/AFP; William Thomas Cain/ Getty Images News; **LS4**: Rosemary Calvert/Photographer's Choice RF; Peter Richardson/robertharding; Kwok Kwong Chao/EyeEm; Mike Windle/Getty Images Entertainment; BSIP/Universal Images Group; YinYang/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **R4**: YinYang/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **U17**: pbombaert/Moment; Chris Ryan/Stone; Chonlachai Panprommas/EyeEm; Peter Beavis/Stone; agrobacter/iStock/Getty Images Plus; colemmatt/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Cimmerian/E+; imaginima/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Yellow Dog Productions/The Image Bank; petdcat/iStock/Getty Images Plus; KatarzynaBialasiewicz/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Westend61; Juanmonino/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Dave J Hogan/Getty Images Entertainment; Tori Seubert/EyeEm; **U18**: Moodboard Stock Photography Ltd./Canopy; PeopleImages/E+; Azenith Umipig/EyeEm; Fuse/Corbis; Colin Anderson/Blend Images; Carol Yepes/Moment; Westend61; Sally Anscombe/Moment; Colin Anderson/Blend Images; MakiEni's photo/Moment; Mark Edward Atkinson/Blend Images; **C5**: stephanie phillips/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Indeed; Cultura RM

Exclusive/Zero Creatives; Barcroft Media, Sven Hagolani/Corbis; **U19**: Alistair Berg/DigitalVision; Monty Rakusen/Cultura; ymgerman/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; PeopleImages/E+; Nne-Christine Poujoulat/AFP; Hero Images; Richard T. Nowitz/Corbis Documentary; kali9/E+; Michael Blann/Photodisc; Caiaimage/Robert Daly; Elliott Kaufman/Corbis; Anthony Weller/Corbis Documentary; Inti St Clair/ DigitalVision; Diana Healey/The Image Bank; Rob Lewine/Image Source; Uwe Krejci/DigitalVision; Dougal Waters/DigitalVision; H. Armstrong Roberts/ClassicStock/Archive Photos; **U20**: Pauline St. Denis; Ranta Images/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Betsie Van der Meer/ Stone; Hero Images; **LS5**: KidStock/Blend Images; Jose Luis Pelaez/ Photodisc; diego_cervo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **EA**: niolox/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; Kateryna Kyslyak/EyeEm; mukesh-kumar/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; Ryzhkov/iStock/Getty Images Plus; RichLegg/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; arlensfoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; MichaelWende/iStock/Getty Images Plus.

The following photographs have been sourced from other library/ sources.

SU: Tatiana Popova/Shutterstock; BlueOrange Studio/Shutterstock; CandyBox Images/Shutterstock; Jacek Chabraszewski/Shutterstock; Odua Images/Shutterstock; li jianbing/Shutterstock; Nejc Vesel/ Shutterstock; picturepartners/Shutterstock; **U1**: Dinodia Photos/ Alamy Stock Photo; Eduardo Rivero/Shutterstock; **U2**: Courtesy of International Paralympic Committee (IPC); **U6**: © Daniel Seddiqui/ livingthemap.com; **U9**: Chris Howes/Wild Places Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **U10**: Courtesy of Peter Ross; © Bella Tipping; **LS4**: Courtesy of Mikaila Ulmer; **U18**: Friday Barnes, Girl Detective © 2016 by R.A. Spratt and illustrated by Phil Gosier. Reprinted by permission of Roaring Brook Press, a division of Holtzbrinck Publishing Holdings Limited Partnership. All Rights Reserved; Courtesy of Penguin Random House LLC; **U19**: Mark Bassett/Alamy Stock Photo; Roger Bamber/Alamy Stock Photo.

Front cover photography by Hero Images.

Commissioned photography by Gareth Boden and Sergio Gosálvez.

Illustration

Lisa Beta (Illustrationweb) (Listening 1); Nigel Dobbyn, Dusan Lakicevic (Beehive illustration) (Speaking 2); Amerigo Pinelli (Advocate Art).

Audio

All audios are sourced from Getty Images.

Centric/SoundExpress; Toy Invention/SoundExpress; Robert Muhammad/SoundExpress; SJ Pettersson/SoundExpress; Mykola Odnorog/SoundExpress; aleksander shvarev/SoundExpress; Wordsmith/SoundExpress; Richard Neumann/SoundExpress.

URLS

The publisher has made every effort to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of printing. However, the publisher takes no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantees that sites will remain live or that their content is or will remain appropriate.

The publishers are grateful to the following contributors: cover design and design concept: restless; typesetting: emc design Ltd; audio recordings: produced by Leon Chambers and recorded at The SoundHouse Studios, London; Life Skills and Culture sections: Nina Lauder; Grammar reference section: Ellen Darling, Steve Marsland and Rebecca Raynes; project management: Louise Davoren

PREPARE 6

STUDENT'S BOOK

- Enjoy interactive, personalised lessons with themes and resources relevant to the New Ukrainian School concept
- Create confident English users with our enhanced vocabulary and grammar syllabus
- Inspire learners to expand their horizons and knowledge exploring Prepare's Life Skills and Culture sections
- Support and extend learning through the new collection of online resources

Аудіосупровід до підручника

Ви знайдете за посиланням:

publishing.linguist.ua/prepare6-sb-audio



Відеосупровід до підручника

Ви знайдете за посиланням:

publishing.linguist.ua/prepare6-sb-video



ВИДАВНИЦТВО

ЛІНГВІСТ

publishing.linguist.ua

Where
your world
grows

This book is part of a learning experience that could only come from Cambridge. It's shaped by unique insights from our extensive research and expertise, all to enable teachers to do what they do best – teach – and learners to reach their full potential.

Find out more at cambridge.org/english



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS & ASSESSMENT

ISBN 978-617-8103-74-3



9 786178 103743